This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world’s books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that’s often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book’s long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

+ Make non-commercial use of the files We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.

+ Refrain from automated querying Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google’s system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.

+ Maintain attribution The Google “watermark” you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.

+ Keep it legal Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can’t offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book’s appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

About Google Book Search

Google’s mission is to organize the world’s information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world’s books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at [http://books.google.com/](http://books.google.com/)
Army — Drill and Tactics
Militia — U.S.

1. Military calls — U.S. [eq 1]
2. Soldiers and sailors — Hymns [eq 2]
Captain of the Georgia Hussars, Savannah, Georgia.
A

CONCISE SYSTEM OF INSTRUCTION,

ARRANGED AND ADAPTED

FOR THE

VOLUNTEER CAVALRY

OF THE

UNITED STATES.

BY GEORGE W. BEHN,
CAPTAIN COMMANDING THE GEORGIA HUSSARS.

SAVANNAH.
PUBLISHED FOR THE AUTHOR.
1842.
Entered according to Act of Congress, in the year 1842,
By George W. Bean,
In the Clerk's office of the District Court of the district of Massachusetts.

Boston:
Printed by Freeman and Bolles,
Washington Street.


PREFACE.

The object of this work is that of condensing the principal manoeuvres and duties required of Cavalry; therefore it cannot be expected that every duty, connected with Cavalry, will be embraced in this small work, inasmuch as it would require volumes to treat the subject fully.

The great variety of military books which have been published, upon the duties of Cavalry, present but little variation in the manoeuvres, which is sufficient testimony that the service and nature of the troops cannot be changed.

The author submits this volume as a condensed work from distinguished authors, without designating them, with such emendations and additions, as he deemed expedient for the benefit of this species of force.

It will be gratifying if any advantage can be derived from this edition, which is dedicated to those who are disposed to seek for instruction; and to his superiors he submits the entire work, with humble diffidence. Possessing, as he does, a knowledge of the extreme imperfection which attends every page, he solicits their forbearance.

The term Cavalry, as commonly received, comprises every description of soldiers serving on horseback. The different nature of which, both as to troops and horses, are further distinguished by the denomination of Heavy and Light.

The value of Cavalry is not sufficiently appreciated. Their excellence consists principally in the rapidity, regularity, and promptitude of their movements; and consequently in the activity of the men and horses. Formerly Cavalry constituted the principal strength of an army, and every person of distinction was ambitious to be a cavalry soldier.

Dragoons are the medium between Heavy Cavalry, and that
which is properly called Light; they act occasionally with one or the other.

Dragoons, conformably to their institution, ought to be infantry mounted upon horses, that they may arrive with more expedition at the scene of action, where they are expected to engage on foot; and in battle form in line, and act with the infantry. Such was formerly the actual service of Dragoons, or, as they were then denominated, Arquebusiers on horseback.

Dragoons are cavalry that serve on horseback or on foot, as circumstances require.

Heavy Dragoons are furnished with stout horses, and armed with fusées, bayonets, pistols, and sabres. They are employed in close attacks upon the enemy's lines, in general engagements.

Light Dragoons are armed like the Heavy Dragoons, but mounted on lighter and swifter horses. Their duty differs in no respect from that of Light Horse, or Hussars, except dismounting and engaging on foot.

Light Horse are cavalry lightly armed and accoutred, and furnished with horses lighter than those of the Heavy Dragoons. They formerly carried carbines, strapped to their shoulders, but this is now generally laid aside, and their only arms are pistols and sabres.

During the 17th century, Hussars were little known, except in Hungary, from whence they derive their origin. They had their clothes almost as ample as the Polish Horse, and were armed like their Hussars.

In Hungarian, Hussar implies twentieth, because twenty peasants are obliged to furnish one horseman to the cavalry.

Hussars are the national cavalry of Hungary, and Croatia, in Europe. They are lightly accoutred, and armed with sabres, and pistols, and occasionally with carbines.

Hussars are placed upon the extremities of wings, and in the reserve; they are also employed in skirmishing. During an action they ought not to be kept on the wings; that station would be an exposed position, and no benefit would be derived or expected.

The appearance of such troops in the enemy's rear, during the engagement, cannot fail to have a very important effect, and will not subject such detachment to any great risk, even if they should not succeed; for light cavalry, commanded by an enterprising officer, if they should be intercepted on one side, will always be enabled to retire by the other, or extricate them-
selves by cutting their way through. A good light cavalry, 
well conducted, can never be cut off, nor fail of accomplishing 
their retreat.

Cavalry ought never to surrender, or capitulate, if they can 
cut their way through an enemy, nor should they stand still a 
moment, where they are likely to be attacked; even in open 
squares, they ought to be moving about and changing their 
positions, as many tricks can be played them by a designing 

The Prussian Hussars have shown that they are equally 
capable of every kind of service.

Carabineers are light cavalry, armed with carabines, longer 
than those of the other cavalry. They are sometimes dis-
mounted to perform on foot, like Dragoons.

Cuirassiers differ from the carabineers, and other heavy 
cavalry, in being armed with cuirasses, having besides, like 
them, straight swords, carbines, and pistols.

It is difficult to comprehend what is related by some of the 
old military authors, that in the midst of an action the cavaliers 
alight to fight sword in hand. This appears romantic, at least 
in our time; no person will be easily prevailed upon to imitate 
their example.

The Horse Artillery, now so extensively employed, is a spe-
cies of cavalry; the men are generally mounted on horses, and 
armed with sabres, but their duty is essentially different from 
that of cavalry; it consists principally in transporting their 
heavy field pieces, with rapidity, to any given point of attack, 
and in manoeuvring them in action. The men ought, however, 
to be taught the use of the sabre on horse back, and the man-
ner of attacking in squadron, that they may defend their field 
pieces, when closely pursued by their enemy.
# CONTENTS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Preface</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## DIVISION FIRST

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subdivision 1. Military Terms</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot;</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. Military Terms</td>
<td>16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot;</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. Military Terms</td>
<td>21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot;</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. Military Terms</td>
<td>26</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## DIVISION SECOND

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subdivision 1. Dismounted Drill</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot;</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. Mounted Drill</td>
<td>35</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot;</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. Sabre Exercise</td>
<td>42</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot;</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. Manual of the Pistol</td>
<td>55</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## DIVISION THIRD

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subdivision 1. Inspection of Arms</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>59</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot;</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. Evolutions for a Troop</td>
<td>61</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot;</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. Evolutions suitable for a Squadron or Regiment of Cavalry</td>
<td>96</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot;</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. Reviews</td>
<td>164</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## DIVISION FOURTH

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subdivision 1. Trumpet and Bugle Soundings</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>172</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot;</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. Camp and Field Duty</td>
<td>175</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot;</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. Standing Orders</td>
<td>196</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
**CONTENTS.**

**APPENDIX.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>No.</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>General Regulations for the Army</td>
<td>199</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>Courts of Inquiry</td>
<td>230</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>Courts Martial</td>
<td>232</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>Carbine Manual</td>
<td>272</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>Trumpet or Bugle Signals</td>
<td>291</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>Hymns</td>
<td>303</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### MILITARY TERMS,

**ALPHABETICALLY ARRANGED.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Term</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Attention</td>
<td>17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Aids</td>
<td>26</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Advancing</td>
<td>27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Column</td>
<td>11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Close, or Solid Column</td>
<td>11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A Column of March</td>
<td>11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>An Open Column</td>
<td>11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Covering</td>
<td>17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Caution</td>
<td>17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Change of Front</td>
<td>18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Countermarching</td>
<td>19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Countersign</td>
<td>26</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Command, words of</td>
<td>19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Division</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Distances</td>
<td>16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dressing</td>
<td>16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Echelon</td>
<td>11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Eyes Right, Eyes Left</td>
<td>34</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Forming</td>
<td>9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Files, Rank and</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot; Single</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot; Close,</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot; Loose</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot; Open</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot; Double Open</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Guards</td>
<td>18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Halt</td>
<td>27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Intervals</td>
<td>16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Line</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Markers</td>
<td>23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Orders</td>
<td>13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot; issued daily</td>
<td>13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Orderlies and Orderly Sergeants</td>
<td>13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Orderly Non-Commissioned Officers</td>
<td>13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Orderly Officer</td>
<td>14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Orders after</td>
<td>14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot; Brigade</td>
<td>14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot; Division</td>
<td>14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot; General</td>
<td>14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot; Regimental</td>
<td>14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Order of the Ranks</td>
<td>14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot; Open</td>
<td>14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot; Close</td>
<td>14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot; Inverse</td>
<td>14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot; Natural</td>
<td>14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Oblique</td>
<td>17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Punctuality</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pivot</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Passaging</td>
<td>17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Patrole</td>
<td>24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Post</td>
<td>24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pioneer</td>
<td>26</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Parry</td>
<td>26</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Parley</td>
<td>29</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Parole</td>
<td>29</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Parole Entire</td>
<td>9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot; and File</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot; Double</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reconnoitering</td>
<td>24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rein Back</td>
<td>27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sizing</td>
<td>18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Signals</td>
<td>22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Serrefiles</td>
<td>22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sentinel</td>
<td>26</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Telling off</td>
<td>27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Words of Command</td>
<td>19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wheeling</td>
<td>21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wheels</td>
<td>23</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
CONCISE SYSTEM OF INSTRUCTIONS.

DIVISION FIRST.

SUBDIVISION FIRST.

MILITARY TERMS.

CONTENTS.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Open Files.</td>
<td>Orderlies and Orderly Sergeants.</td>
<td>Open Order.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Double Open Files.</td>
<td>Orderly Non-Commissioned Officers.</td>
<td>Close Order.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A Line.</td>
<td>Orderly Officer.</td>
<td>Natural Order.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Punctuality.</td>
<td></td>
<td>Inverse Order.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Division.</td>
<td></td>
<td>Pivot.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Forming** — Signifies the arrangement of a number of soldiers, in conformity to prescribed rules and regulations.

The word *form* is also applied to a variety of movements, and changes, from one position to another, viz., retiring from the front and form in rear — form line — form to the front — form rank entire — form column — form echelon, &c.

Cavalry are generally formed in two ranks, a single troop, or a small squadron is preferred, in single ranks. Double ranks is suitable only for the use of a large squadron, or a regiment.

**Rank Entire** — Is when a troop, squadron or regiment are formed in one rank.
Double Ranks — Is the formation of a body of men in two ranks, with a space between them. If the space is equivalent to the length of a horse, it is considered close order; if adequate to the length of three horses, the rear rank is considered to be at open order. Close order is frequently observed in the manoeuvres. Open order is commonly used when exercising on parade, or receiving an officer.


Single File — Is one man in the rear of the other.

Close File — Is when each man’s boot-top touches his neighbor’s. Your horse then occupies about two feet eight inches.

Loose Files — Allows four inches from boot-top to boot-top. Your horse will then occupy about three feet.

Open Files — Is a space between the files equal to the breadth of a horse; or it is that space left by the files after reining back and doubling behind the right files, (when at close files.)

Double Open Files — Is the distance of a horse’s length between the files, (which is about ten feet.) This is a very good distance for the performance of the sword exercise.

A Line — Expresses a troop, squadron, or regiment, acting together on parade, or in the order of battle. Any number of men abreast of each other forms a line.

Punctuality. — In a military point of view impunctuality may be attended with the worst consequences. No man has a right to make others wait for him. With volunteers punctuality should be the first consideration. How often do we find privates the first on parade, and the first at company meetings.

Silence. — After the word Attention is heard, silence should prevail throughout the ranks. Without silence confusion would expel from the ranks order and precision, and nothing could be executed to the satisfaction of the members, or to the honor of the corps.

Division. — A division, strictly speaking, is the half of a
troop, which is told off in two divisions. A squadron may be
told off in subdivisions, divisions, and divisions of half squadrons.
When a troop parades forty-eight men, there will be sufficient
to admit of eight subdivisions, containing six men each, four
divisions of twelve men each, and two divisions of (half) com-
pany, of twenty-four each.

A Column. — Any number of subdivisions, divisions, or parts
of the line (exceeding twos or threes, which are commonly
called files, or ranks of threes) constitutes a column.

There are three kinds of column, Close, or Solid Column,
Column of March, and Open Column.

A Close (or Solid) Column — Is without distances or inter-
val.

A Column of March — Is half or quarter distances.

An Open Column — Wheels into line, or forms upon a named
subdivision, or division, by the flank march of the others. A
column of march must be converted into an open or close
column, previous to the formation of the line, or may form by
obliquing, or a flank march. An open column occupies the
same extent of ground as when in line. All troops, when
formed, are either in line, column, or

Echelon. — There are two kinds of echelons, direct and
oblique. Echelon may be considered a column of a particular
kind, the fractions outflank each other; either the whole of
their extent, or some part of it. A direct echelon is a perpen-
dicular and successive march of subdivisions, or divisions, from
line, the distance to be named in the order. Whether at close
column, or open column, an oblique echelon is less than a quar-
ter of a circle of each man on his own ground. If obliquing
to the right every right knee will be in the rear of every left
knee. If the oblique is to the left the order of the knees will
be reversed, every left knee will be in the rear of every right
knee.
Example of a column of echelon obliquing to the right.

\[ \begin{array}{cccccc}
& & & & & \\
& & & & & \\
& & & & & \\
& & & & & \\
\end{array} \]

Explanation. 1 represents the left knees, 2 the right knees. Ground is gained to the right and front. An oblique echelon is also formed by the wheel, less than a quarter circle, from line into column.

Example.

Explanation. By the wheel, less than a quarter circle, it forms a wheel to the right, ground is also gained to the right and front.

Example of a direct echelon advancing from the right.

Explanation. The above figure represents a direct column of echelon of divisions formed by the direct and successive march, at division distances, from the line L. R.

The column of echelon is applicable to a variety of movements; an extensive line may advance in order, over broken ground, with great ease, and be in readiness to form for an attack, by a momentary operation. Part of a line may be marched into action, and the balance kept back, till the effect
MILITARY TERMS.

of the first charge on any given point of the enemy's line is determined; when the reserved portion of the column may with great effect be brought up, or it may retire, covering the retreat of the other, if repulsed. An oblique echelon may be moved to the flank and front, as Fig. 2, in preference to Fig. 1. The horses move with their natural front, which is the most proper march, and the line is formed again, either parallel or oblique to its original position, by a short and easy movement, and, should circumstances require it, a sudden change of position may be effected without the least embarrassment.

The direct echelon, when seen at a distance in front, is not easily distinguished from a continuous line.

The movements of echelon should be masked by a line of skirmishers, whenever performed within the view of an enemy.

Orders — Are such lawful directions as may be issued by a superior officer, to assemble troops for duty, inspection or exercise. The appointments, or what is termed order, in military language, is usually specified to them by the commanding officer; in General Orders, by one of the following terms: — Review Order — Parade Order — Field-day Order — Inspection Order — Marching Order; all of which sufficiently express the intention. But nevertheless, every squadron or regiment has its own regulations for dress and appointments on all occasions; and these must be strictly conformed to by every individual.

Orders are issued daily — Whether in garrison, camp, or on the march, by officers commanding troops. They are afterwards inserted in the orderly books of troops, by the first sergeants, whose books are to be examined by their respective officers. Every order relating to the men, must be read and explained to them by an officer of each troop.

Orderlies and Orderly Sergeants — Are appointed to wait upon the General and other officers, to communicate orders and carry messages.

Orderly Non-commissioned Officers — Are those who are orderly or on duty. On hearing the beat for orders, they are to
repair to the orderly room, and having taken down the orders in writing, they are immediately to show them to the officers of their company, and to warn the men for duty.

Orderly Officer.— The officer of the day.

A. O. After Orders — Are such as are given out, after the regular issue of the daily orders.

B. O. Brigade Orders — Are those issued by the General officer commanding troops which are brigaded.

D. O. Division Orders — Are those issued by General commanding a division. D. O. is also used for District Orders.

G. O. General Orders. — Those issued by the commander in chief of the forces.

Gar. O. Garrison Orders. — The orders given out by the commandant of a Garrison.

R. O. Regimental Orders — Such orders as the commanding officer may deem necessary to issue, either in consequence of General orders, or emanating from himself for the discipline of his regiment.

Orders Military — Are those issued for conferring marks of honor on those officers who have distinguished themselves by their prowess or military valor.

Orders of the Ranks. — Open Order is one half of the extent of the squadron used only for exercise, and to enable the half squadron, (or half ranks in that situation,) to wheel about inwards.

Close Order. — Close order for the rear rank, from head to croup, is three feet; (commonly called half a horse's length;) close order for a column of subdivisions, (when in single rank,) is practised with horses' heads to croups, which is too close. It frequently occasions horses to kick, and in a charge, in such compact order, the horses are liable to strike. It should be half a horse's length.

Natural Order. — This is the primitive formation of all troops.

Inverse Order — Is when the fractions of a line are reversed in maneuvering, and the first forms on its left, and the last on its
right; although the first man of each fraction remains on its right, and the last on its left.

_Pivot_—Is the man upon whom all wheels are made; both the flank men are pivot men; but only one of them at a time, unless the squadron wheels outwards from its centre. In column, the pivot is the man on that flank wheeled upon. A moving pivot is when the wheels are made on the march; the pivot then describes a small circle, within the wide circle made by the wheeling flank. If a wheel is to the right, dressing must be to the left; if wheeled to the left, dress by the right. During a wheel, dressing must be observed from the wheeling flank, and distances preserved from the pivot; avoiding all crowding to the pivot, as pivots are never to be forced. (See _Wheeling_, and _Wheels_.)
DIVISION FIRST.

SUBDIVISION SECOND.

MILITARY TERMS.

CONTENTS.

Passaging. | Sizing. |

Intervals — The space between bodies in a line with each other. The intervals between squadrons, (when in regiment,) should be the length of two horses. The intervals between troops when in squadron should be one horse’s length. The interval between men when in rank, is six inches from boot-top to boot-top, (except in dismounting, when open files will be required.) (See p. 10.)

Distances — Expresses the space between bodies behind each other. The distance of a column from the head to the rear, should be equivalent to its extent when in line—if nearer, the column could not wheel into line. (For subdivision and division distances, see Open Order, p. 14.)

Dressing — May be done by the right, centre or left. When on a march, dressing is observed and practised according to the direction the wheel is made. When in line, dressing is generally by the right; dressing is expressed by Eyes right — Eyes left — Front. The head should be sufficiently turned to see the second and third man in the rank, (without leaning forward,) if exactly in line. When sitting upright and dressing to the right, the left eye will be in a line with the buttons of the jacket, front, eyes are directed square to the front.
MILITARY TERMS.

Troops dress by the point to which they form.

" march by the point to which they are dressed.

" halt by the point to which they are dressed.

On the march, (only when ordered otherwise.)

Covering — Is done by every man following the man in his front, called his file-leader, which forms a perpendicular column.

Passaging — Is necessary in opening or closing the intervals of a rank to perform this movement. Carry the bridle hand over his neck, to the direction the passage is to be made; turn the horse’s head a little in the same direction, until his shoulders are in motion; close the leg opposite to the direction, towards the flank of the horse, and he will move sideways. When you have completed the passage, remove the aiding leg, apply the opposite one, and bring him square to the front.

Attention. — When a troop is standing (or sitting) at ease, they should be prepared for this word, by calling the troop by name, (as Independent Voluneteers, or Liberty Troop, or Light Dragoons, Attention!) When pronounced by a commanding officer, the attention of the men should be directed towards him, that they may hear, and understand what may be said, or ordered. After the men are brought to the attention, not a head or hand should move, or a syllable be uttered.

A Caution — Precedes the word of command for execution; a pause should be between the caution and command for execution. (See p. 31.)

Telling Off — Is making known to every man his situation for the day, or till that parade is over, and it is of great importance that he should know it, as he would his name on any other occasion. Telling off is from the right, to tell off ranks of threes — it is by Right, Centre, Left. To tell off the whole line for the formation of divisions and subdivisions, the line will be ordered, Eyes right; the man on the right will number one, and turn his head to the left; the men will continue to number, as high as there are men in line.

Obliquing — Is to gain ground to the front and flank, taking
care to keep the front parallel to its former position, without opening out. For an oblique to be properly executed, it is generally found that every man turns his horse's shoulders as much as possible, (or as much as his interval will admit,) which will place his horse's head half a neck behind his right hand man's horse's head, and his right knee behind his right hand man's left knee. The greatest difficulty is to keep in that position; and great care is required that the left flank be not too fast when the oblique is made to the right. When in double rank, every man in the rear rank, when obliquing to the right, covers the file on the right of his natural file-leader; when the word forward is ordered, the whole turn their horses as much to the left as they had done to the right, the line will be at easy files and perfectly straight. (See fig. 1, page 12.)

_Sizing_—Is practised in regular cavalry, and is useful in volunteers. When sizing is practised, the tallest men and horses are placed in the centre, the smallest on the flanks.

_Change of Front_—Implies the shifting of a front to the rear, by successive movements, by wings, companies, divisions, subdivisions, threes or files, whereby those on the right take up the ground originally occupied by the left, or if a sudden retreat is required, a change may also be produced by wheeling about by threes or subdivisions, or divisions. This, however, will produce an inversion of the flanks; consequently it should not be resorted to but in cases where an instantaneous charge is required.

**Example.**

![Diagram of Cavalry Drill]

**Explanation.** This method of changing front is requisite, when the enemy, by a sudden movement, get close in the rear, and there is not sufficient time to change the front by a flank march.

_Guard_—Is a number of men holding themselves in readi-
ness to have any duty, or a particular duty assigned them, or rather such as are on duty, and relieved at certain hours.

A Captain’s Guard is fifty men.
A Lieutenant’s Guard is thirty men.
A Cornet’s, or Third Lieutenant’s Guard, is twenty men.
A Sergeant’s Guard is twelve men.
A Corporal’s Guard is six men; or a Sergeant and Corporal, eighteen men.

Countermarching — Is a very important movement for cavalry; countermarching and changing front must be done either by successive, or progressive wheels of its divisions or parts.

If by successive wheels from a halt, each division (or fraction) performs their part only when it comes to their turn.

If progressive (which is the most desirable for expeditious movements,) which is the manner it should be performed, (unless otherwise ordered in the caution,) the column will at the same time march to the given point, countermarch and form front to its former rear, parallel with, and nearly on the same ground.

Countermarching and changing front from the right flank.
Example.

\[\text{Explanation.} \quad a \ b \ \text{represents the line fronting} \ c. \quad D \ E \ \text{represents the line after the countermarch fronting} \ F. \quad G \ \text{is where the front of the column countermarches.}

\text{Words of Command} — Are divided into commands of caution, and those of execution. The cautionary words are first given, and not a man should move till those of execution are completed. The cautionary are used only as a preparation to what is to
be executed. For example — *The Squadron will advance — in Echelon of Division — from the Right — March!* All these words, except the last, are cautionary; serving only to point out the movement, caution the men to be in readiness, and to remain without the least motion till the command of execution, *March!* is given.

After the men have acquired a knowledge of the commands, they may be abridged by omitting some of the expletives. For example: — *The Squadron — will form — Column of — Divisions — by the Right — the Right in front!* It may be abridged thus — *Squadron — form column — Divisions — Right — Right in front!*

Officers must be very attentive to the commands, and repeat them to their several divisions, (whenever they are not instantly obeyed.)

In extended lines, (or when a large body of men are mounted at exercise, and much noise exists,) great attention on the part of the officers is requisite, more especially upon the field of battle; and in brisk movements it will be necessary to repeat the commands instantly, as follows:

By the commander — *Horses in hand!*

By the division officers — *Horses in hand!*

By the commander — *At common — Pace — Forward — March!*

By the division officers — *At common — Pace — Forward.*

By the commander — *Charge!*

By the division officers — *Charge!*

**Note.** — The cautionary commands are marked thus — . The words of execution, followed by a note of admiration. (1)

When a column or line have been halted, and the order is, *Give (line or) column — Forward — March!* at the word march, the line or column should simultaneously move.

**Note.** Charges are generally made with sword in hand. When the charge is made with pistols in hand, the swords should be slung to the wrist. Charges are frequently made with sword in hand, and pistols are called into use afterwards.
DIVISION FIRST.

SUBDIVISION THIRD.

MILITARY TERMS.

CONTENTS.

Signals.

Wheeling.—In all wheels, (of any kind, whether of divisions or in line,) dressing is to the wheeling flank, except the man on the wheeling flank, who is governed by the pivot, and looks along the line; the rear rank having a wider circle to describe, must carry their bridle hands to the wheeling-flank; if to the right, must cover the man on the left of their natural file-leader, and if to the left, must cover the man on the right of their natural file-leader, during the wheel. (See Pivot, and Wheels.)

To halt during a wheel, the halt must be made by the point dressed to during the wheel; but when ordered to dress, it is invariably to the pivot, which must never be pressed upon; from a halt a line cannot conveniently of any extent be wheeled, but by divisions or subdivisions. When the division which marks the new alignment has been wheeled into it, all the others are to wheel half as much, and the remaining half (by right or left shoulders, forward,) just before they march into the alignment.

When a line is wheeled, and another wheel is required immediately, the line must be dressed, previous to the second wheel being made, or ordered. It is often the case that when a wheel in line is made, another order is given for another wheel,
before the line is dressed, which occasions the line to be almost
if not entirely broken up, or confusion introduced in the centre
and wheeling flank.

An eighth, quarter, or half wheel, is the eighth, quarter, or
half, of the quarter circle.

Example.

(See Wheels.)

Note. The eighth wheel is seldom required, and can be
entirely dispensed with.

Remark. In all wheels of a squadron, the front rank dress
to the standard, (or centre if the standard is not out, by the
centre man advancing his sword,) and the rear rank by the
wheeling flank.

Signals. — In extended lines, and of detached parties, on the
flanks and front it is difficult to communicate orders by the
voice; hence it has been found necessary to substitute signals.
These are generally certain established sounds from drums,
trumpets and bugles, or the discharge of a certain number of
cannon.

There are also other signals given by the voice, termed vocal
signals, such as paroles, countersigns, watchwords, &c. &c.

The signals must be perfectly understood by the officers and
non-commissioned officers, and instantly obeyed.

Serrefile — Is a rank of commissioned and non-commissioned
officers, drawn up in the rear of a troop, squadron or regiment.
When in line, their duty is to attend to the rear rank, and keep
it up in action, and to replace the officers who may fall in the
ranks. On this important service too many cannot be em-
ployed. Without a serresile rank young troops are very apt to
give way and fall into confusion.

In close column the serresiles are in the rear of the column.
In filing, in ranks of threes, in the rear of their divisions.

Markers. — The adjutant, or the sergeant-major, or an officer
appointed for the purpose, is placed to mark out a new
alignment, and the distance required; that in wheeling a line
from a halt, the marker is the point to be dressed to; or in form-
ing a line from column (a marker is also useful) the flank ser-
genants of each squadron move out, turn their horses so as to face
the line, align themselves accurately, by each seeing the second
man from him, (and no further) and remain with their swords
extended till the adjutant makes a signal for them to resume
their places.

Whenever the line is to be formed on a division, whether it be
by deploying from close column by successive wheels on a re-
verse flank, or from the direct echelon, the marker is in every
instance the same.

To form close column no markers are required, except for the
base, which is given by the adjutant.

At the caution, On the right (or front) Division form the line,
two markers are placed before the named division, and this base
is prolonged by the adjutant and his assistants on both flanks of
the new line. At the word, March! a marker forms the outward
flank of each squadron, (namely, from the flank which is to be
the farthest from the named division,) advances expeditiously
to align himself upon the given base, and takes his place a little
beyond where the outward flank is to rest in the new line.

In forming line, the squadron officer coming up with the
leading division of his squadron, advances and places himself
upon the flank of the preceding formed division, and from
thence corrects the dressing of his own squadron as it marches
into the alignment, by the marker who prolongs it.

When a line is to be formed by a deploy from close column,
upon any other than the division in front, the named division
sends forward a marker to take up the ground to which it is to advance. This marker is the base which is prolonged by the adjutant for the general alignment, and by a marker from its outward flank for each squadron.

_Patrole_ — Is a party sent out to obtain information; namely, to acquaint themselves with the situation of the roads, paths, woods, rivers, bridges, and country generally, that a plan of defence or attack may be laid immediately. The patrole is under a commissioned or non-commissioned officer, (according to the force of the patrole.) It is not advisable that less than a division should compose a patrole. If a subdivision is sent out, another should be sent in support; or two subdivisions may be sent out at the same time, with instructions to keep within sight or hearing of each other.

This is an essential part of the duty connected with cavalry, and should be frequently practised.

_Post_ — Is a place for attack or defence, where a number of men are placed. An officer's post, is that situation which he occupies in line or column, or any position the squadron or troop can possibly be placed in. Unless an officer is perfectly familiar with his post, he would not know when to shift his post, or if he is ever to act the part of a marker. A sentinel, when on duty, is at his post; and particular place selected for alarm men to assemble at, is called a rendezvous, which is likewise called alarm post.

_Reconnoitering_ — Is of the same nature as patrolling. Reconnoitering parties ought to consist of a commissioned and non-commissioned officer, (according to the number of the party,) and from fifteen to thirty privates, formed in double rank, numbered from right to left, and divided in the following manner.

One file to be appointed van-guard.
One file rear guard.
One file flankers to the left.
One file flankers to the right.
The rest of the party to be considered the main body, and march in files, at slow pace. Frequent halts should be made to ascertain the situation of the country, and listen if any noise, resembling horses, can be heard. The van and rear guard, and flankers, march in single files, twenty or thirty yards from each other, and as far distant from the main body, (by which they must be regulated,) as to keep them in sight at all times. Whenever a halt is made by the main body, the flankers are to make their observations, and may ascend hills for that purpose, if any are near them. If an enemy or any troops appear in their sight, one of them must come in and report, or report to the main body of the party. If the bugle sounds the *rally*, they all repair to the main body by the shortest way.

The report of the officer, in command of a reconnoitering party, must contain the names of those who compose it. The observations, the miles of march, a sketch of the country, and the direction. Report to be as laconic as possible.
DIVISION FIRST.

SUBDIVISION FOURTH.

MILITARY TERMS.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>CONTENTS</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Sentinel</td>
<td>Right or Left Shoulders Forward</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pioneer</td>
<td>Wheels or Left or Right</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Countersign</td>
<td>Upon the Centre, Right or Left</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Parry</td>
<td>Parley</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Aids</td>
<td>Parole</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

_Sentinel_ — One who has to watch, or keep guard, to prevent surprise.

_Pioneer_ — One whose business it is to level the road, throw up works, and cut down bushes, when an army marches through the woods; and to fall trees across a road, where an enemy is encamped, and is considered liable to a surprise; this duty being assigned more particularly to the pioneers. It does not, however, exclude the balance from being called upon.

_Countersign_ — In military terms, denotes the watch-word of the day (or night.)

_Countersign_ — is frequently required and practised, in rendering a piece of writing more authentic, by having a second signature.

_Parry_ — To turn aside.

_Aids_ — Are given by the hand and leg, accompanied by corresponding motions of the body.

Corrections and animation are by the spur, the whip, and the voice. The two last, cavalry have nothing to do with, and horses should be taught to disregard them, when mounted. The spur is unnecessary as an aid; unless the horse should
disregard the leg, the spur may then be slightly applied. When the spur is applied for animation, it should be done vigorously, by closing the legs, dropping the toe, and press the rowel just behind the girth, till the horse obey it; but if for correction, the leg must be taken from the horse's side, and the spur struck against him with more or less violence, according to the occasion.

_Aids_—may be used for various purposes, namely: advancing, reinig back, turning to the right, or left, and about, and passaging to either side.

_Right or left Shoulders Forward_—Is an order generally used in cavalry, to change the direction of a column on the march, or of the head of a column, to which the remainder of the column will successively conform, upon their arrival on the ground, from whence the change was made. At the word, _Right Shoulders Forward!_ the man on the left is now the pivot man, who gradually turns his horse's head to the left; and the others, in order to keep dressed by him, will circle round him, (if he continues to turn.) At the word, _Forward!_ he moves straight forward, and forms a front, to whatever direction is intended by the commanding officer. In wheeling to the right by the order, _Left Shoulders Forward!_ it is practised in like manner. Care should be taken in preserving the usual intervals, and avoid pressing against the pivot.

_Advancing._—The first motion is to raise the hand a little to feel the horse's mouth, and prepare him for what you require of him; turn the nails downwards, which will give two or three inches more rein, close the calves of both legs, and the instant the horse moves forward remove your legs, and replace your hand quietly in its former position.

_Halt._—Turn your nails upwards, press your elbow to your side, approach the calves of your legs, throw your body back till the horse stops, after which replace every thing as before.

_Rein Back._—Raise your hand a little, and draw it gently to the centre of your body, bending a little forward till the horse
obey; use the calves of the legs only to keep him straight, should he throw his croup out to one side or the other.

Wheels. — Previous to describing the wheels, it would be expedient to state that there are three kinds of wheels.

First, upon his centre, when he moves both his fore and hind feet.

Secondly, upon his fore feet, when his hind feet describe the circle, or any part of it.

Thirdly, upon his hind feet, when his fore feet describe that circle; the last is seldom required in dragoon riding, and it would require a well disciplined horse to perform it accurately. The first and second are more in use than the third.

The first may be exemplified by the centre man of three.

The second may be exemplified by the standing flank man in a wheel; in turning on your own ground, it is not only usual but easiest to move both shoulders and the croup at the same time, and bring the horse's fore feet where his hind ones stood. (See Wheeling and Pivot.)

To the Right Wheel. — Raise your hand a little and carry it over to the right, turn your body and head a little to the right, and close the right leg just behind the girth. When you have thus made the quarter circle, replace every thing as it was.

To the Left Wheel. — Raise your hand (as before) and carry it to the left, turning your head and body a little to the left, closing the left leg. When performed, take off the leg. (See Wheeling.)

Forward — March! — When a column or line is halted, and the word is given, column or line, Forward — March! — every man must move at the word March.

When an oblique is made, and the order is given, head of the column, or column, Forward, the former direct march must immediately be resumed. When the order is, Head of the column, Forward, the head (or front) alone will resume its former march, and the remainder of the column will, alternately, upon arrival on the ground from whence the forward was made. When the
order is directed to the column, the whole will simultaneously resume the former direct march.

*Parley* — From the French, *parler*, to speak. A conference with an enemy on any particular subject.

*Parole* — From the French, *parole*, a word signifying the promise or word of honor given by a prisoner of war when permitted to be at large, that he will return at a time appointed. The individual thus set at liberty is said to be on his parole.

*Parole* — Is also a word given out in orders every day by the general in command, for the purpose of distinguishing friends from foes.
DIVISION SECOND.

SUBDIVISION FIRST.

DISMOUNTED DRILL.

CONTENTS.

| Rest. | Left Dress. | Quick Step. |
| Attention. | Front. | Double Quick Step. |
| Right Face. | By the Right, Forward,— | Marching to Front. |
| Left Face. | Dress. | Halt. |
| Right about. | Steps: Oblique, Side, Back and Direct Steps. | Eyes Right. |
| | | Eyes Left. |

Position of a Dismounted Trooper. The heels in a line, and about three inches asunder. The toes turned out sufficient to form the eighth of a circle; the body without stiffness, and erect; the arms hanging (without restraint) naturally straight down. The little finger to be on the centre of the thigh, or back of the seam of the pantaloons, the palm of the hand turned a little to the front, the head square to the front; chin drawn in a little towards the upper part of the breast, and the eyes will strike upon the ground about fifteen steps.

Note. — The heels may be closed, until ordered to prepare for sword exercise; then open the heels by turning them out-
wards as far as will bring them even with the toes, and the toes can be moved farther apart after the heels are moved. When the order is given —

*Rest.* — Draw back the right foot until the toes are in a line with and about three inches from the left heel; at the same time bending the left knees, bring your hands together; the head and body may move at pleasure, but the left foot must not be shifted from its original position.

*Attention!* — At the order the former position is to be resumed instantly; bring up the right foot, drop the hands to their former place; when at *Attention!* no motion, or talking whatever is expected; the attention is required, to ascertain what will be the next order, that it may be heard and correctly understood. (See p. 17.)

*Right Face!* — Raise the toes a little, and turn on both heels to the right; after the wheel is made, carry the right foot to its former place.

*Left Face!* — Is practised in the same manner, turning on both heels to the left, (raising the toes a little,) without bending the knees; bring the right heel to its former place.

*Right about — Face!* — Turn the left toe to the front, by turning on the left heel. Step back the right foot to the rear, the hollow opposite to the left heel, sufficiently far back to escape touching the spur. At the word *Face*, turn on both heels, raising the toes a little. Bring the right foot to its former place.

*Note.* — In the facings the left heel is the pivot on which the body turns, and must never move from its place.

*Right Dress.* Every recruit in line turns his head briskly to the right, that the left eye may be in a line with the centre of his body, (without turning the shoulders,) and look to the right, and he will either fall back, advance, or stand his ground, according to his situation, keeping his head turned, and eyes to the right, until ordered —

*Front!* — At the word turn the head square to the front, and look directly forward.
Left Dress! — Is practised in the same manner as Right Dress! (The flank, to which the dressing is directed, being left, does not require a different form.)

Front! — Heads are turned, and eyes are again directed to the front.

By the Right — Forward — Dress! — The man on the extreme right, moves quickly forward, stepping off with the left foot. When he finds himself in a line with the two advanced men, (viz. markers) halts, and turns his head, and eyes, to the front; the remainder of the squad advance in same manner, each taking care to keep a little in the rear of his right hand man, and advance in the new alignment, after his right hand man halts.

Left Forward — Dress! — Requires no explanation, as it is performed upon the same principle as Right Forward — Dress!

By the Right — Backward — Dress! — A marker must be placed in the rear, for the new alignment, at the word Dress! the whole fall back, by stepping back with the left foot, and dress by the marker, marking the new alignment.

Note. — The popular faults in dressing, are stooping forward, turning the shoulders' squareness, and passing the alignment.

Steps. — There are different steps used by infantry. Notwithstanding cavalry is not often dismounted, it is requisite that some knowledge should be had respecting the different steps, viz.; Oblique Step, Side Step, Back Step, Direct Step to the Front, and Time Step.

The Oblique Step — Is used when it is requisite to gain ground to the front and flank at the same time.

The Side Step — Is to close or open the intervals of a rank, or gain a small distance to the right or left.

The Back Step — Is used for a small movement to the rear.

The Direct Step to the Front — Is marching square to the front. The Direct Step will be twenty-eight inches from heel to heel, in common time.
The Time Step — Is to mark time, without gaining ground, when a momentary delay is requisite.

Common Time, 90 steps
Quick Step, 110 "
Double Quick Step, 140 "

To a minute.

Marching to the Front. — Forward
— March! At the first word the weight of the body to be balanced on the right foot. At the word March! the left foot is lifted from the ground, and carried forward, making a step twenty-eight inches from heel to heel. When the left foot comes to the ground the right is brought forward in the same manner; and thus the recruits continue to advance, taking care to continue well balanced on their limbs, till the word is ordered —

Halt! — At the word the whole suddenly stop on the advanced foot, bringing up the other foot, (to the former position of the soldier.)

Note. — Dismounted recruits should be taught the filings, wheeling into column, wheeling into line, countermarching, changing front, deploying from column into line. Dispersing and rallying, should be taught them when mounted, first in a walk; also charging should be taught in like manner.

It is not to be expected that volunteer cavalry, during the existence of peace, can be brought to that perfection as when in constant service. If cavalry were taught the marchings, (dismounted) and it should be required of them to dismount, and with carbines attack infantry, in covered situations, they would find themselves more at home, and less fatigued from foot duty. Practising the dismounted drill, divests them of the citizen's naturally awkward, rustic gait and manner, which
is natural to most men, and should be discarded on parade. For that unsoldierly appearance on parade, they should have a substitute, composed of a graceful and military air, and a knowledge of their duty, which would give them that soldierly confidence, so conspicuous and becoming in the well-disciplined soldier.

_Eyes Right._ _Eyes Left._

_Eyes — Right!_ At the order which is _Right_, turn the head gently to the right, so that the corner of the left eye, next to the nose may be on a line with the buttons of the jacket. At the command — _Front!_ Turn the head gently to the front.

_Eyes — Left!_ The head will be turned to the left, according to the instructions to _Eyes Right._

The instructor will take particular care that the turning of the head does not de-range the squareness of the shoulders, which would happen if it were too sudden, or if the head turned more than is necessary.

The trooper should turn the head only to align himself, and in the wheelings, it is important that he should be accustomed to turn it but very little.

_Front!_
DIVISION SECOND.

SUBDIVISION SECOND.

MOUNTED DRILL.

CONTENTS.

Equipments. | Stand to your Horse, and Unlink Horse. | Wheeling by Threes, and Forming.  
Mounting. | Filing from the Right to the Front. | Increasing and Diminishing the Front.  
Dismounting. | Forming line and Retiring.  
Link Horses.

The mounted drill embraces a combination of instructions, suitable for man and horse.

If the following instructions are carefully observed, in conjunction with those for a dismounted recruit, the evolutions adapted to a troop or squadron, will be very easily comprehended.

Equipments.—Every recruit should be instructed what is requisite for the horse, and he should be taught, (if he does not know,) how to saddle, bridle, and accoutre his horse. Girths, surcingles, breast-straops, and cruppers, should not be too tight, but drawn moderately; too much tension will render the horse uneasy, and embarrass his movements. Cruppers and breast-straops are seldom used in volunteer cavalry.

Mounting.—Stand to your Horse! This is the first position of a light dragoon, before mounting. He is to place himself square to the front, a little behind his horse's head, with the right hand on the curb-rein, over the snaffle, and near the bit, with the back of the hand uppermost.

Prepare to Mount!—Face to the right, at the same time, place the left hand where the right was, run the right up the
rein, till you get hold of the nob-or middle of it, extending your arm directly over the horse's neck; step to the right, till you are opposite the horse's shoulder; lay hold of both sides of the curb rein with the left hand, just under the right, with the back of the hand towards the horse's head; run the left hand down to the mane, throw the end of the rein gently over the horse's neck; seize a part of the mane with the right hand, put it into the left, and twist it round the fore finger; take hold of the stirrup-leather just above the iron, with the right hand, stepping back with the right foot, place the ball of the left foot in the stirrup, the knee close to the horse's shoulders; lay the right hand on the off side of the cantle of the saddle.

Mount. — Raise yourself on the right foot, and by your hold with both hands, bring your body upright, looking over your horse; pause there an instant — carry the right leg over the horse's croup, (taking care not to touch it,) and in the mean time, remove the right hand from the cantle to the off side of the pummel of the saddle; put the ball of the right foot in the stirrup quietly, (without stooping to do it with the right hand;) quit the mane, but not the bridle, with the left hand, and with the right hand, the back upwards, take the snaffle rein and lay it in the left; let the superfluous part hang down on the off side; press both reins between the thumb and first joint of the fore finger; raise your bridle-hand sufficiently to feel the horse's mouth.

Note. — All horses should be taught to stand till mounted. When they are not properly trained, recourse must be had to expedients.

The above mode of mounting should not be dispensed with on any occasion. There is perfect safety — the horse can neither bite nor kick. If your holds are secure, you are in no danger from whatever a horse can do, even previous to your getting your leg over.

If the horse move forward, when you propose to mount, shorten the inside rein sufficiently to bend his neck a little,
and if he moves it will be inwards, which renders you every advantage in mounting.

Dismounting — Prepare to Dismount. — Seize a lock of mane with the right hand, place it in the left, (in the same manner as in mounting) quit the right stirrup, place the right hand on the off side of the pummel of the saddle.

Dismount. — Raise yourself on your hands, bring the right leg gently over the croup, shifting your hand from the pummel to the cantle of the saddle, (pause an instant,) looking strait across your horse; bring the right foot to the ground, and then the left; seize the rein with the right hand, under the left, the back up; quit the mane and bridle with the left hand; advance, (left foot first) to the position of — Stand to your Horse.

Crossing the stirrups over the horse's neck when dismounted, is frequently practised. It prevents many accidents when linked, or leading past objects with which the stirrup-irons may be entangled — it becomes the first and last motions in dismounting. You stoop to bring over, the right stirrup before you seize the mane, and you throw over the left stirrup (after dismounting) before you seize the bridle with the right hand. In mounting again, the stirrups are to be replaced before you put a lock of mane into the left hand.

Linking Horses. — If the orders are, Prepare to Dismount and Link — the first motion after reins back, is to loosen the rein of the halter, and let it drop between the reins, (of the bridle) then proceed with the dismounting motion.

Note. — Weight to a horse's head should be avoided, and it is preferable to have the rein of the halter, attached to the front of the saddle, (by a ring) than to have it coiled up on the side of the horse's head.

Upon a march, the halter should, be hung to the saddle, to avoid weight to the horse's head.

Halters should not be used in linking, for so short a time as would be required for an oration. For expedition, the rein of
the bridle which is not attached to the breast-plate rings, is the
most convenient. Take the rein of the bridle from over the
horse's head, tie it to the nose-piece of your left hand man's
halter, which is now your right hand-man, as every man is
faced about to front their horses. The distances of the horses' heads apart, when linked, is eighteen inches.

If the link is made with the halter, the rein of the halter is
dropped between the reins of the bridle; take hold of it with
the right hand, under the reins; put it through the ring of the
halter of your left hand man, (now your right,) also under his
reins; bring it back, and put it through the ring of your own
halter, tie the end in a running knot, the horses' heads being
eighteen inches asunder. Every man faces to the right about,
and awaits further orders.

Preparation to Mount and Mounting. — When the line is
formed in front of the horses, order, About — Face! Every
man faces to the right about.

Stand — Unlink Horses. — The horses are unlinked, and the
men will take the position of standing to their horses. (See
p. 35.)

Note. — When the horses are unlinked, the rein of the
halter is brought over the off side of the horse's neck, under
the reins; tie the end to a ring in front of the saddle.
The left files are ordered,

Rear Rank, by the right to order — Rein back and cover —
March! The left files are reined back, and cover their right
hand man. Order

Prepare to Mount! — The whole go through the mounting
motions. Order

Mount! — After mounted, order

Rear Rank, form rank entire — March!

The following references will be found very useful for
mounted recruits. They are considered connected with the
lesson for Mounted Drill:

A Pivot, p. 15; Obliquing, 17; Passaging, 17; Counter-
MOUNTED DRILL.

marching, 19; Right or left Shoulders Forward, 27; Aids, 27; Advancing, 27; Halt, 27; Rein Back, 27; Wheeling, 21, 28; Forward, 28; Attention, 17; Covering, 17.

The above references and the following movements will render to new recruits suitable knowledge for the movements of a troop, and if they have due attention, a few parades with a troop will give sufficient confidence to a recruit to make him feel himself an old soldier in the movements.

The first in order is to number off the squad from right to left, and make known to every man his place, by ranking off into threes—telling off into twos and subdivisions, and (if the number will admit of it) into divisions.

Filing from the right to the front.—From the right to the Front File—March!—The two men on the right compose the first file. They immediately advance square to the front; at the order the balance of the line will turn their horses as much to the right as they can, (entire wheel into ranks of twos cannot be done, as the width of two horses are not equivalent to their length,) and will successively march to the ground where the right marched from, and will alternately (upon arrival on the ground) wheel immediately in the rear of the twos which last wheeled.

Front—Form Line—March!—At the word march, the near twos oblique to the left, and form on the left of those already formed, dressing as they come into line. The front twos will not halt, (unless ordered,) but continue square to the front.

From the Right—Retire by Threes—March!—The whole wheel by threes to the right, the front threes (viz. the right threes when in line,) wheels to the right about; the remainder marches immediately in their rear.

Forming Line to the Former Front.—Right about, Form Line—March!—The leading threes wheel to the right about, advance a horse’s length and halt, the rear forms on their left, passing in the rear of the croups of those already formed.

By Threes, Right Wheel—March!—At the order the whole
squad will wheel to the right by threes, and halt till ordered forward.

*On Leading Threes, Right Form Line—March!* — The front threes wheel to the right, advance a horse's length and halt, the rear continue a direct march, which will be in the rear of those already formed; after arriving on the left of those already formed, wheel to the right, march into line, (taking care not to pass those already formed,) dress by the right as you march into line.

When recruits have been drilled in the different wheels, passing, reining back, sword exercise, &c., they can be permitted to parade in the ranks of a troop.

There are many movements in the drill for a troop which could be selected and practised by new recruits.

*Increasing and diminishing the front.* — When a squad (or troop) is in line, and the order is given

*By subdivisions, from the right advance to the front—March!* The first subdivision will advance, the remainder of the line wheel by subdivisions to the right, march to the ground where the right marched from, wheel to the left and cover.

*To advance from the right by divisions.* — The first division will advance, the remainder of the line will be wheeled in ranks of threes to the right, march to the ground previously occupied by the first division; left wheeled up into divisions as they successively march to the ground, and cover the leading division.

To advance from the right by the ranks of threes, the first (or right threes) will advance, the remainder wheel by threes to the right, march up to the ground, and wheel in the rear of the preceding threes.

*To increase the front.* — Forming subdivisions to the front from files or threes, the officer on the right of the subdivision will repeat the order, *Form Subdivisions—March!* — The rear

* See *Evolutions*, n. 75.
files or threes of each subdivision will left oblique and form to
the front on the left of the file or threes to be formed upon.

To form divisions to the front from subdivisions, is executed
upon the same principle. The officer commanding the division
repeats the order, the subdivision to form to the front will be
ordered by its commander, Left oblique, and will be obliqued to
the left sufficiently to avoid the striking of the left man or horse
of the division to be formed upon.

Forming line (or company) to the front from files, threes,
subdivisions, or divisions, is performed upon the same principle.

Diminishing the front. — When in column of subdivisions,
and the order is to Advance by threes from the right of subdi-
visions, the right threes will advance at the pace the column is
then marching, the officer of each subdivision will order Left
threes, fall back (or break off) and cover; the left threes will
rein back and cover, by an oblique to the right.

To reduce the front from divisions to subdivisions, the order
will be to Advance from the right of divisions by subdivisions;
the subdivision on the right will continue at the steady pace the
column is then marching. The officer of the subdivision on the
left will order Slow pace;* after the right is relieved from the
subdivision to be covered, the officer will order Right oblique,
and when covering the leading subdivision, order Forward —
March!

To diminish the front of a division of company, or a troop
in line, or a division of half squadron, by divisions advancing, it
is executed by the division on the right advancing, the remain-
der wheeled in ranks of threes to the right, march to the ground
in rear of the leading division, wheel into divisions successively,
and cover well.

* If the column is marching in a walk, the subdivision that is to fall back will
halt until clear of the left of the subdivision to be covered.
DIVISION SECOND.

SUBDIVISION THIRD.

SABRE EXERCISE.

CONTENTS.

Drawing Swords. | Words of Command. | Charging at the Head and
Sword Salute. | Six Divisions and Explanations. | Ring.

Position.— (For explanation, see p. 30.) The left hand hold of the scabbard with the thumb and fore finger to keep the sword steady, and in readiness to draw.

Sword Knots.— Every sword should have a sword knot attached to it; it prevents accidents, which are liable to occur if the sword escapes from the hand. When in action, it prevents the sword from being forced from the grasp. If the sword escapes from the hand when on parade, how very unpleasant must a man feel if compelled to dismount and pick it up, or call on a spectator to wait on him.

Sword Knots are made of soft and pliable leather, to shape itself to the hand and wrist. It should never be so short, or wide, or twisted so tight to the wrist as to confine it, which would give a crampness to the hand; the length should admit of the sword-hilt turning in the hand, which is requisite in giving point.

Handle Swords.— 1st. Bring the right hand across the breast and over the left arm; put it through the sling twist, the sling round the wrist; take hold of the sword-hilt with the back of the hand uppermost. 2d. Draw the sword out of the scabbard until the hand is on a line with the elbow.
**Draw Swords.** — Draw the sword out of the scabbard, with the edge to the front; extend the arm, raise the point higher than the hilt, turn the wrist to the left, the nails towards the body, and bring the hand to the centre of the breast, the edge of the sword to the left, the point erect, the flat to the front. 

2d. Bring it smartly down, till the hand is on a level with the elbow, (still perfectly upright) the edge towards the horse's left ear, which gives an easy bend to the wrist.

**Slope Swords.** — Rest the back of the blade against the right shoulder. When mounted, the hilt, (as a resting place,) can be lightly placed on the thigh.

**Carry Swords.** — Bring it again to the last position of drawing swords, (and perfectly upright.)

**Return Swords.** — 1st. Carry the hand to the hollow of the left shoulder; the back of it to the front. 2d. Drop the point behind the left shoulder, and slide the sword gently down the arm, without lowering the right hand; guide the point into the scabbard, thrust it down till the hand is in a line with the elbow. 3d. Quit the sling, and push the sword smartly into the scabbard, bringing the right hand across the body to its place.

*Note.* — Swords are always returned from the Carry.

**Sword Salute.** — From the Carry, raise the hand till the thumb is opposite the chin; by a quick turn of the wrist, bring the flat of the sword full to the front; place the thumb on the ear of the hilt, ease the fingers and let the hilt rest in the hollow of the hand, holding it between the fore finger and thumb; from this position, without advancing the elbow, let the arm fall until it is straight; drop the point of the sword near the horse's shoulder, and the blade before the horseman's knee. In recovering the sword, the point must be raised without advancing the arm; the hilt again brought opposite the chin, the flat to the front, the point upright. From this position it is brought down to the Carry. When a new recruit is first drilled with the sword, a circle with the cuts made on the wall, or on paste-
board painted, with the ring and cuts, would facilitate the progress of the recruit.

![Diagram of a circle divided into six sections with numbers 1 to 6.

WORDS OF COMMAND FOR THE DRILL.

Handle Swords, in 2 motions.
Draw Swords, 2 "
Slope Swords, 1 "
Carry Swords, 1 "
To the right prove distance, 2 "
To the front prove distance, 2 "
* Salute as Cavalry, 2 "
Stand at ease, 1 "
Prepare to Guard, 1 "
Guard, 1 "
Cut one, 2 "
Cut two, 2 "
Cut three, 2 "
Cut four, 2 "
Cut five, 2 "
Cut six, 2 "
Cut one, two and three, 1 " each.
Cut four, five and six, 1 " "
Assault, (viz. 6 cuts combined,) 1 " "
* Reverse Swords, 2 "
* Recover Swords, 3 "
Return Swords, 0 "

* Is from the Carry.
PERFORM SIX DIVISIONS OF BROAD SWORD EXERCISE BY WORD OF
COMMAND.

First Division of Movements.

Prepare to Guard, . . . . . Right.
Guard, . . . . . Right.
Assault, . . . . . Right.
Left protect, . . . . . Right.
Right protect, . . . . . Left.
Front give point, . . . . . Right.
* Prepare to Guard, . . . . . Right.
Guard, . . . . . Right.
Slope Swords, . . . . . Right.

NOTE.—After the completion of the assault, return to the
Prepare to guard.

The head turns and remains in the direction the cuts are
made.

The assault is in the first, second, and third divisions.

The motions throughout the exercise are to be performed
quick, and correct attention to the points of dressing given op-
posite the words of command, to show from which fugleman
the particular motions are to be taken.

Explanation of the First Division of Movements.

The assault represents the charge. The six Cuts are directed
indiscriminately to the right and left.

The Protects are against the returning cuts of the enemy.

The point is given on a supposition of the enemy's retreat.

WORDS OF COMMAND.

Second Division of Movements.

Prepare to Guard, . . . . . Right.
Guard, . . . . . Right.

* Drop the point, and bring it with a sweep round the left shoulder, to the
Prepare to guard.
Assault, . . . . . . Right.
Guard, . . . . . . Right.
Bridle arm protect, . . . . Right.
Sword arm protect, . . . . Left.
St. George’s Guard, . . . . Right.
Rear cut, . . . . . . Right.
Guard, . . . . . . Right.
Slope Swords, . . . . . . Right.

Explanation of the Second Division of Movements.

After making the cut, return to Prepare to guard. The assault represents the charge. Guarding the bridle arm denotes being obliged to retreat, and as the pursuer will generally attack the near side, it is the safest position to receive him in, as it not only covers the arm; but as the enemy passes carry the blade forward by moving the hand in that direction — it will also give protection to the whole of the near side.

The sword arm is supposed to be attacked by the second pursuer the moment the first is gone past, who makes his advance on the off side in consequence of seeing the attack on the near side defeated.

In the defence of the sword arm the head and shoulders are exposed, to which an offensive movement is made, and parried, by coming to the position of St. George — the retreat is completed by giving Cut six to the rear.

WORDS OF COMMAND.

Third Division of Movements.

Prepare to Guard, . . . . Right.
Guard, . . . . . . Right.
Assault, . . . . . . Right.
Guard, . . . . . . Right.
Horse’s head, near side protect, . . . Right.
Horse’s head, off side protect, . . . Left.
SABRE EXERCISE.

* Cut one, two and one, . . . Right.
Left protect, . . . . . Right.
Right protect, . . . . Left.
Prepare to Guard, . . . . Right.
Front give point, . . . . Right.
Cut one, . . . . . Left.
Guard, . . . . . Right.
Slope Swords, . . . . Right.

Examination of Third Division of Movements.

The assault is the charge; the horse's head is attacked and protected; the antagonist's second cut at the horse; he exposes his own head, which opening is taken advantage of in making the cuts one, two and one, in which are parried by coming to the Left and Right Project, and returns the point with Cut one.

Note. — After the point is given to the front, the Cuts 1, 4, 2 and 3 may be combined and practised, instead of the single Cut one.

Fourth Division of Movements.

Note. — As this division relates to action against infantry, attention must be paid to the principle given in the drill lessons for the application both of the point and edge of the sword.

WORDS OF COMMAND.

Prepare to Guard, . . . . Right.
Guard, . . . . . Right.
† On your right to the front — Parry, Right.

* After the last motion in Cut one, come to the Prepare to guard by dropping your point.
† Upon the word "front" being repeated, retire the sword arm as far to the rear as possible, in a line with the shoulder; when arrived at the extent of the arm the action of the wrist is to carry on the motion of the blade, till it become perpendicular, with the point upwards and the back of the blade to the rear. This motion must be executed with spirit. Pause a little in this position at the word "parry;" make the parry to the front; in completing it recover the blade.
*Cut two and one, . . . . Right and Left,
Right give point, . . . . Right.
Prepare to Guard, . . . . Right.
Left give point, . . . . Left.
†Cut three and four, . . . . Left and Right.
Guard, . . . . Right.
Slope Swords, . . . . Right.

Explanation of the Fourth Division of Movements.

The charge of a line of Infantry in a narrow pass occupied by them on both sides.

The first movement is to force the bayonet off to the front on the off side, and applying the edge to the right and left; then the point, keeping both sides of the enemy occupied.

Fifth Division of Movements.

This division treats on the defence of one horseman against the attack of two, one on each side — the cuts and thrusts are to be made as much to the front as possible.

WORDS OF COMMAND.

Prepare to Guard,. . . . Right.
Guard,. . . . Right.
Left cut one and two,, . . Left.
Right cut one and two, . . Right.
Left give point, . . . . Right.

over the right shoulder, and hold yourself in readiness for cuts Two and One, the back of the sword arm to touch the left temple, the edge of the blade upwards, the back resting on the (left) shoulder, the point sunk below the level of the hand; in that position wait for the order Cut two and one. Cut two on the off side; Cut one on the near side.

*In giving edge against infantry the body must be turned in the direction of the cut; in recovering the sword from one side to the other the sword will cross the head.

†Cut three is on the off side, Four is on the near side of the horse — in cutting Four, the first motion is to place the blade in the position for the left parry, from which the cut is to be made.
EXPLANATION OF THE FIFTH DIVISION OF MOVEMENTS.

The defence of one man against two:—

The cuts applied on both sides are the offensive movements towards each antagonist as he approaches. The Left give point is to the enemy on the left, and the point to the right for the enemy in that direction, whom he has at bay by remaining at the longe, waiting the approach of the other antagonist, at whom he cuts five the moment he is supposed to be within reach, and cuts six in the opposite direction.

The moment the point is given (to the right) turn the edge of the blade to the front, and have your attention to the left, keeping the arm and sword extended in a right line in readiness to Cut five on the near side, as soon as it is supposed the antagonist is within reach.

Five is on the near, and six on the off side of the horse; upon the completion of the last motion of Cut six, come to the Prepare to guard.

Return to the Prepare to guard upon the conclusion of the last motion in Cut two.

WORDS OF COMMAND.

SIXTH DIVISION OF MOVEMENTS.

Prepare to Guard, . . . . . . Right.
Guard, . . . . . . . . . . . . . . Right.
Right give point, . . . . . . . . Right.
Cut one and two, . . . . . . . . Right.
Left parry, . . . . . . . . . . Left.

6
Left protect,  Left.
Right protect,  Left.
Front give point,  Left.
Prepare to Guard,  Right.
Guard,  Right.
Slope Swords,  Right.

Explanation of the Sixth Division of Movements.

The modes of making an attack on the near side of a retiring enemy, with the means of defeating it, supposing it to be done at speed:—

Offensive. Give point to the right, and make cuts one and two, by which time it is supposed the enemy have rode past.

Defensive. Receive the enemy with the sword-hand in the hollow of the left shoulder, ready either to protect or parry; as he makes his thrust, drop your blade outwards, it will carry off his point. Cuts one and two are protected by the Left and Right protect, and by checking your horse, let your opponent pass, and instantly give him the point.

As soon as each division of movements is correctly executed by word of command, it must then be performed only by one word, specifying the particular division of movements.

The motions are all to be taken from the fuggleman, without waiting for any other command than the particular division.

Remarks on the Sixth Division. The Parry is performed in two motions. 1st. By bringing the sword-hand into the hollow of the left shoulder, after the completion of Cut two, the back of the hand outwards, the point perpendicular. 2d. Drop the point of the blade as much to the rear of the near side as possible. As the defence is made against an attack on the near side (in pursuit,) the Left protect must be carried as much to the left as the arm will permit, and the Right protect in a direction to the left ear of the horse.
Performing Sword Exercise when Mounted.

When a troop or squadron is in line — order

Prepare for Sword Exercise — Centre and left of threes, rein back — March! — The centre of threes rein back and cover the right of threes; the left of threes rein back and cover the centre of threes (now in the rear of the right.) Commissioned officers act as fuglemen.

Reining back with horses unaccustomed to being reined back, renders it very unpleasant, and frequently the ranks are thrown into confusion. — Order

Prepare for Sword Exercise — From the right of threes by single files — Advance to the front — March!

When the right of threes have advanced sufficiently to allow the centre and left to cover well, order — Halt!

Prove distance of files — to the right prove distance of files — Proofs!

At the precautionary order, every man extends his right hand square to the right, the back of the hand up, the back of the sword blade near the right ear; at the word of execution carry your sword over to the right, back of the blade to the front, the point towards your right hand man — at the order, As you were! slope your swords.

Proving distances to the front is performed in like manner.

Front, form line — March! — The centre and left march to the front, and form line.

When a troop is in files, on a march, and the sword exercise is to be performed, order — To the right and left open your files — March!

The right of twos will turn to the right, and the left of twos turn to the left, both will march out to the edge of the street or road, or if in an open field, when the files are sufficiently opened out the commanding officer will order — Forward! Every man will turn his horse’s head in the direction he was previous to opening out, and preserve that distance.
To close files when the Sword Exercise is finished, order

To the Centre, close your files — March! — Every man will turn his horse square to the centre, and march to the centre, when he will resume his former front.

When in ranks of threes the centre will remain in the centre, the right and left will open out.

Note. — When the troops are in files the officers will be ordered to the centre to act as fuglemen, who will be ordered to their posts previous to the files being closed to the centre.

The Sword Exercise may also be performed by advancing by single files from the right of subdivisions.

Example.

1. Guard.
2. Right give point at the small of the back.
3. Cut one at the back of the head.
4. Cut two at the face.
5. Cut one at horse's head, near side.

1. Bridle arm protect.
2. Left parry.
3. Left protect, hanging guard.
4. Right protect, near side.
5. Horse near side protect.
6. Front give point.

The Attack and Defence in pursuit, may be practised by opening out and allowing the intervals sufficiently wide to admit
a horse (at double open files) to pass through, the rear rank will be ordered to attack the front. (Double open files, p. 10.)

_The Rear will attack the Front — March! —_

The rear rank will go through the offensive.
The front rank will go through the defensive.

After the rear rank have passed the front rank, the natural rear rank becomes the front rank, and the natural front rank becomes the rear rank.

When the attack is first made, it will be continued till the trumpet is sounded to cease, then both ranks will retire and form on their former ground.

**ATTACK AND DEFENCE.**

**Offensive.**

1. Cut one at the horse’s head, near side.
2. Cut two at horse’s head, off side.
3. Cut one at adversary’s face, off side.
4. Parry, cut three by sinking the guard.
5. Cut one at the thigh or body, off side.
6. Cut one at the sword arm.
7. Cut two at the face near side.
8. Cut one at the horse’s head, near side.

**Defensive.**

1. Near side protect.
2. Horse head off side protect.
3. Left protect. Cut three at antagonist’s wrist.
4. Right protect. Low and return Cut six at adversary’s neck.
5. Left protect, hanging guard.
6. Right protect.
7. Near side protect, and Cut six at sword arm.

The attack and defence should be practised with sticks, or wooden swords.
Charging at the Head and Ring at speed, with sword in hand.

Gage Post viewed in front.
1. The body.
2. The slider.
3. A brass screw.
4. The staff of soft wood.
5. The head.

Ring Post.
1. The body.
2. The slider which can be fixed to any height.
3. A brass screw.
4. A triangle.
5. Hook to place the ring on.
6. The ring.
DIvision Second.

Subdivision Fourth.

Manual of the Pistol.

Contents.

Drawing Pistol. Firing Right or Left. Firing with swords drawn.
Firing to the Front. Return Pistols. Target firing.
Oblique, and Rear Firing.

When an order is given to draw pistols without designating which should be drawn, the left will be the first in order.

When an order is given

Prepare to draw your left pistol — Loosen the flounce (or caps) over your left pistol.

Draw pistol — Seize the pistol with the right hand over the bridle arm and bring it to the

Advance — The muzzle up, and your hand over the right pistol-holster.

Prime and Load — Drop the barrel of the pistol into the left hand, (without altering the hold of the bridle) close to the guard, push back the hammer with the thumb of the right hand, take a cartridge out of the box with the finger and thumb (of the right hand,) bite off the end, prime, shut the pan with the three last fingers. Turn the back of the bridle-hand up, which will bring the muzzle upright; shake in the powder, and push in the ball with the paper, (after the powder,) seize the ramrod with the forefinger and thumb, draw it half out, then take hold of it back-handed, draw it out and insert the end in the muzzle and ram down the cartridge; return the ramrod and bring the pistol to the advance.
Ready! — Lay the barrel into the left hand; cock the pistol with the thumb; bring it again to the advance.

Note. — If the order do not designate the direction the firing will be directed, it will be in front.

To the Front — Present! — Present the pistol at the height of the shoulder, over the horse's head, the arm extended.

Aim!

Fire! — Draw the trigger down immediately with the fore finger; bring the pistol to the loading position; draw it up to the half cock.

Load! — As before directed.

Oblique Firing. — To the Right Oblique — Present! — Present your pistol to the front, and right, over your right hand man's horse's head, the height of the shoulder.

Aim!

Fire! — After firing, bring the pistol to the loading position.

Load!

To the left oblique — Present! — Present the pistol over your left hand man's horse's head, to the height of the shoulder.

Aim!

Fire! \{ See above.

Load! \}

Firing to the Rear! — To the Rear Present! — Turn your body to the rear as far as you can, or raise yourself in your stirrups.

Aim! — Aim directly to the rear.

Fire!

Load!

Firing to the Right and Left. — When it is requisite to make a fire to the right, and the troop or squadron is in line, which is sometimes done for practice, the result is the same as firing to the front. Order

To the Left — Face! — Turn your horse on his own ground as far as possible.

Ready! — Cock your pistol.
To the Right — Present! — Extend your arm to the right.

Aim!

Fire! — Draw down, come again to the loading position, and half cock.

Front! — Turn your horse again on his own ground, to the former front.

Load!

To the Right — Face! — Turn your horse to the right as far as the horses to the right and left will admit.

Ready!

To the Left — Present! — Over the bridle-arm as far as you can extend your right arm, the hand as high as the eye.

Fire! — Draw down, and again drop your pistol in the bridle hand; shut the pan with the last three fingers.

Cease Firing!

Return Pistols — Which will be done in the same manner, (across the bridle-arm) as in drawing. Care must be taken that the pistol is not cocked in pushing it in the holster.

Note. — In order to face to the left, or right, to practise the last mode of firing, it would be requisite to file off from one or both flanks, to gain the length of a horse for each man to make the wheel. This mode of firing would be much better for each man to half wheel on his own ground without flanking off from either flank.

Firing with the sword drawn. — The sword is supposed to be at the Carry, and it is requisite to use the pistol.

Draw Pistol! — Drop the blade of the sword down the left side of the horse’s neck, turning the edge up, and the bridle-hand forward; grasp the blade close to the hilt with the bridle-hand, pressing the but against the body; and while the fingers remain under the pistol, cock it with the thumb.

Aim!

Fire! — Fire and return the pistol, and instantly recover the sword, passing the hand through the sling.

Note. — The pistol may be drawn, fired, and returned, with
the sword suspended from the wrist by the sling, but the method above is deemed preferable.

Care should be taken that the balls, when covered with paper, are sufficient to press very closely, or they will slide out.

**Target Firing.** — Target Firing should first be practised at slow pace, with empty pistols. Allowing each man to snap his pistol, it will give each man some information what would be his duty, when loaded and at the charge. A target should be made about *ten feet long and ten feet high*. Posts to be put in the ground and planked up on both sides; the centre (between the planks) filled up with dirt, which will prevent the balls from passing through the plank on the opposite side, and disfigure the front, as both sides of the target may be appropriated to the same use. The distance agreed upon should be scraped out six or eight feet wide, which will give every man the same opportunity, and will be some guide to direct the inclination of the horse.

In order to ascertain more fully the most effectual balls, or the majority of them, white lines should be painted lengthwise, namely: one the height of a horse, another the height of a man's body, the third the height of a man's head. In the centre of the target, at the height of a man's body, have a round spot, as the mark for the direction of the firing. The lines are intended to ascertain what would be the probable effect of the scattering balls.
DIVISION THIRD.

SUBDIVISION FIRST.

INSPECTION OF ARMS.

CONTENTS.

Inspection of Pistols. | Inspection of Swords. | Inspection in Column.

Inspection of Pistols.

When a troop or squadron is in double ranks, and to be inspected while in double rank, and the rear rank is in close order, order Rear rank — By the right — Rein back — March! — The officer in the semifile rank, who is marker for the rear rank, will immediately mark the open order distance. The rear rank will rein back until ordered by the officer on the right, Halt — Dress. The officers will be ordered to their parade post in front. The inspecting officer will inspect first the front, then the rear rank, both from right to left.

When it is desirable to form rank entire, to inspect in one line, commanding officer orders,

The rear will Deploy — and form Rank Entire — March! — The rear will be ordered,

Attention by Threes — Left Wheel — March! — At the order March, the rear rank wheels by threes to the left. Order,

Forward — March! — The rear will march square out until the right (now the rear) have cleared the left flank of the front rank. The rear will then be halted, wheeled up, and marched into rank.
Carry Swords — Return Swords! Order,
Attention to inspection of Arms! — At the caution, loosen the holster's flounces.

Draw Pistols! — Seize the left pistol with the right hand, over the reins, draw it out of the holster, bring it to the advance.

Ramrods in Pistols! — Place the pistol in the left hand, near the guard, the muzzle a little elevated, and directed towards the horse's head. Draw the rod half out and lay hold of it back-handed, draw the rod entirely out, insert it into the barrel, bring the pistol again to the advance.

The officer will pass from right to left, every man (when the inspector is in front of him) will bring his pistol to the advance over the centre of the holster; shake the pistol up and down two or three times, in such a manner as to occasion the ram-rod to be heard. After the officer is past, return the rod. When the officer is returning along the front of the line, he will take a pistol here and there, and examine what order it is in as to the cleanness of lock, flint, &c.

Return Pistols! — Over the bridle arm, and button down your holster flounce.

Care should be taken, in putting pistols into holsters, that they are not cocked.

Inspection of Swords.

Handle Swords! — Draw Swords! — The inspecting officer will again pass along the front from right to left, and every man when he is in front of him, without being ordered, will bring his sword to the front of him, the edge to the left, the hilt to the centre of the breast, turn the sword in the hand to bring the back to the left, which will present the opposite side to the officer. After the officer passes, slope your sword. The officer in returning can examine any sword he deems expedient.

Inspecting in Column.

For inspection a troop can be wheeled in column of divisions; a squadron column of divisions, troops or half companies; a regiment in column of troops or half squadrons.
DIVISION THIRD.

SUBDIVISION SECOND.

EVOLUTIONS FOR A TROOP.

CONTENTS.

A Troop.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>No.</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2.</td>
<td>Formation of a troop in single rank.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.</td>
<td>&quot; 24 in line &quot; &quot; &quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.</td>
<td>&quot; 36 &quot; &quot; &quot; &quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.</td>
<td>&quot; 50 &quot; &quot; &quot; &quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.</td>
<td>&quot; 50 in double rank.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.</td>
<td>Orderly sergeant's duties condensed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Filings.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8.</td>
<td>Filing from the right flank.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9.</td>
<td>Forming to the left.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10.</td>
<td>Filing from the right to the rear.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11.</td>
<td>Forming to the right about.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12.</td>
<td>Filing from the right, left in front.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13.</td>
<td>Forming to the front.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14.</td>
<td>Filing from the right, left in rear.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15.</td>
<td>Filing from the left flank.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16.</td>
<td>From the left to the front file.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17.</td>
<td>Forming to the right.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18.</td>
<td>Filing from the left to the rear.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19.</td>
<td>Forming to the left about.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20.</td>
<td>Filing from the left, right in front.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21.</td>
<td>Forming to the front.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22.</td>
<td>Filing from the left, right in rear.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Filings from the Centre.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23.</td>
<td>Filing from the centre to the front.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24.</td>
<td>Halt.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25.</td>
<td>Forming to the front.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26.</td>
<td>Filing from the centre to the right.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>27.</td>
<td>Forming to the left.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>28.</td>
<td>Filing from the centre to the left.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>29.</td>
<td>Forming to the right.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>30.</td>
<td>Filing from the centre to the rear.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>31.</td>
<td>Forming about.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>32.</td>
<td>Filing from both flanks, by single files.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>33.</td>
<td>Filing to the rear from both flanks.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>34.</td>
<td>Forming former front.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>35.</td>
<td>Filing from both flanks to the rear of the centre.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36.</td>
<td>Forming line on the rear to the former front.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>37.</td>
<td>Filing to the front from both flanks.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>38.</td>
<td>Forming to the front.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>39.</td>
<td>Filing from both flanks to the front of the centre.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>40.</td>
<td>Forming on the rear, former front.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Ranks of Threes. Evolutions by ranks of Threes.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>No.</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>41.</td>
<td>Flank march by threes.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>42.</td>
<td>To advance by threes from a flank.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>43.</td>
<td>Advancing from the right by threes.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>44.</td>
<td>Forming line from threes.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>45.</td>
<td>Marching by threes from the right to the left in front.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>46.</td>
<td>Forming to the front.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>47.</td>
<td>Advancing from both flanks by threes.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>48.</td>
<td>Forming to the front.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>49.</td>
<td>Retiring from both flanks by threes.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>50.</td>
<td>Forming former front.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>51.</td>
<td>Advancing from the inward flanks of divisions, by threes.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>52.</td>
<td>Forming to the front.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>53.</td>
<td>Threes countermarching from the right to the left, in rear.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>54.</td>
<td>Forming line to the right about.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Change of front.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>55.</td>
<td>Change of front by threes, countermarching from the right flank.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>56.</td>
<td>Threes, about wheel.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>57.</td>
<td>Change of front by countermarching from both flanks, by threes.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Movements in Echelon.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>58.</td>
<td>Direct echelon from the right to the front.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>59.</td>
<td>Forming to the front.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>60.</td>
<td>Advancing from the left.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>61.</td>
<td>Retiring from line in echelon, from the left.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>62.</td>
<td>Forming line on the first subdivision.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>63.</td>
<td>Change of position in echelon to an oblique alignment.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>64.</td>
<td>To form line to the right from echelon.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>65.</td>
<td>To form line to the left from echelon.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>66.</td>
<td>To form line from a direct echelon on the rear.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>67.</td>
<td>Advancing in direct echelon of subdivisions from the right of divisions,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>when in column.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>68.</td>
<td>Echelon column oblique.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>69.</td>
<td>Advancing from line by subdivisions,</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
in direct echelons, from the right of divisions.
70. Advancing from the right and left flank, and inward flanks of divisions, in echelon of threes.
71. To take ground to the flank and front.
72. Forming line.
   Oblique marching.
73. Head of the column, right, (or left) oblique.
74. Column oblique.
   Advancing, retiring, and wheeling by subdivisions, increasing and diminishing the front, wheeling by subdivisions into line.
75. Advancing by subdivisions to the front.
76. Column retiring, rear in front.
77. Column wheeling into line.
78. Line wheeled in column, right in front.
79. Retiring from both flanks of subdivisions, and re-form in the rear.
80. Retiring from both flanks, and forming to the rear.
81. Forming divisions to the front.
82. Forming line to the front.
83. Increasing the front from column of subdivisions.
84. Forming line to the front.
85. Forming line from column to the right about.
   Forming divisions from line by a wheel and march of Threes.
   Increasing and diminishing the front in changing the line of march, without a previous halt.
   Forming divisions from ranks of threes, by right of divisions, flanking to the right.
   Divisions countermarching and retiring, rear in front, without a previous halt.
86. Forming divisions from line, by a wheel and march of threes.
87. March into line, from the left flank of divisions.
88. Wheeling from line, in column of divisions.
89. Line of march, change to the right, divisions reduced to ranks of threes.
90. Line of march changed to the right, ranks of threes increased to divisions.
91. Line of march changed to the left, divisions reduced to threes.
92. Line of march changed to the left, ranks of threes increased to divisions.
93. Form column of divisions from ranks of threes, by marching to the right.
94. Column of divisions retiring, rear in front.
95. Receiving and lodging the standard.
96. Funeral honors.

1. **A Troop.**

A Troop of Horse is generally composed of 75 men — volunteer Cavalry varies from 30 to 100 men — the latter is too large, and the former is evidently too small. Neither will admit of the divisions desirable in a troop, without inconvenient fractions, and fronts too small, or too extensive.

That number which will admit of continued bisections, without a fraction, and each division into subdivisions and threes without a fraction, is the most eligible for a troop, regard being had to the extent of its front, as a constituent part of a squadron or regiment. The number 48 possesses these properties perhaps more completely than any other. This number of men, formed in two ranks, gives 24 files, the half troop or division 12, the subdivision 6, and each is divisible into threes without a fraction, and at loose files the front will be 24 yards.

For a troop to manœuvre independent of a regiment or squad-
ron, single rank is the most desirable, and has the most imposing effect. In consequence of a great many horses and men being sick or absent, to insure 48 files for duty, a troop should consist of at least 75 rank and file.

2. **Formation of a Troop of Horse.**

When the members of a troop have assembled on their parade ground, the Orderly is required to form the corps. He will order the assembly to be sounded, and will draw his sword. The non-commissioned officers will be on the right (until posted by the first sergeant.)

3. **Single Rank, 24 in Line, without Commissioned Officers.**

- First Lieutenant, 1st Subdivision, 1st Division.
- Second Lieutenant, 3d Subdivision, 2d Division.
- Cornet, Carry the Standard.
- First Sergeant, 2d Subdivision,
- Second Sergeant, 4th Subdivision.
- Third Sergeant, Left of 2d Division.
- Fourth Sergeant, Left of 1st Division.
- Fifth Sergeant, Right of 1st Subdivision, near the First Lieutenant.

The sergeants on the left of divisions will act as pivot men when the troop is in column of divisions and wheels to the left. When wheeled to the right, it will be their duty to keep the left of their respective divisions from flanking off; when in line, the sergeants on the left will act in the same manner.

When the officers are posted, the first sergeant orders

- **Right — Dress!** — Every man look to the right and dress.
- **Front!** — Eyes square to the front.

- **From the Right — Number Off!** — Every man turns his head to the right; commence from the right with number one; each man will, when it is his turn, previous to calling out his number, turn his head to the left. After each man has called out his number, he will look to the front. Each individual must recollect his number during the parade.
The First Sergeant will make known to each man his post, and prove the same to him.

1, 13, Rights of Divisions, proof, as you were.
12, 24, Left of Division, proof, “ “ “
1, 7, 13, 19, Right of Subdivisions, proof, “ “ “
6, 12, 18, 24, Left “ “ “ “
1, 4, 7, 10, 13, 16, 19, 22, Right of Threes, “ “ “
3, 6, 9, 12, 15, 18, 21, 24, Left of Threes, “ “ “
2, 5, 8, 11, 14, 17, 20, 23, Centre of Threes, “ “ “
1, 3, 5, 7, 9, 11, 13, 15, 17, 19, 21, 23, Right of Twos, “ “
2, 4, 6, 8, 10, 12, 14, 16, 18, 20, 22, 24, Left of Twos, “ “

Ranks of threes may be told off by right, centre, left.

Twos may be told off by right, left—or one, two, throughout the line, or by calling out odd numbers rights of twos, even numbers left of twos.

When the corps is told off, and every man is made acquainted with his station, by numbers, and proved—order

Attention! — Eyes Right! — Dress!

Handle Swords!

Draw Swords!

Slope Swords!

If the line is in need of being dressed again after swords are drawn, it should again be dressed previous to the corps being delivered up to the commanding officer. When dressed advance to the centre of the front, face the line, order

Carry Swords!

When you approach the commanding officer, halt half way between the parade posts of the commissioned officers and the ground occupied by the officer in command.

Salute him.

The Roll will be called after the corps is given up.

When the Cornet does not carry the standard, he will take rank and have a command according to the number of privates and officers. When the standard is carried, if there is two
equal divisions and two privates can be spared, they will be stationed one on each side of the standard as a guard.

A troop that parades 24 privates will not be in need of Corporals. Five Sergeants would be all-sufficient.


The following formation of thirty-six men in line, without the commissioned officers, will be very useful to a young officer. Thirty-six men can be formed in four subdivisions, consisting of nine men each. This formation will admit of three, threes in each subdivision.

This number of men can also be formed for company drill in six subdivisions, each containing six men. To form a corps of thirty-six, and have corporals, the following would be the posts of officers. 18, 36, left, and 1, 19, right of divisions.

1st Lieutenant, right of 1st subdivision, viz. 1st division, 1
2d Lieutenant, right of 4th " 2d " 19
Cornet, " " 2d " 7
1st Sergeant, " " 5th " 25
2d Sergeant, " " 3d " 13
4th Sergeant, " " 6th " 31
1st Corporal, left of 6th " viz. left of the line.
2d " " " 3d " viz. 1st division.
3d " " " 1st " in 1st division.
4th " " " 4th " in 2d division.

Note. — The members will be on their left, and such officers as may be counted in the number opposite their post will be their number.

5. Formation of fifty men, in single rank.

| 1st lieutenant. right of 1st sub. 1st div. 1st div. of |
|---------------------------------|-----------------|
| company, right of 3d serg. 2d sub. |

Right of subdivisions.

1st division of company.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>1st serg. 3d sub. 2d div.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1st corp. 4th sub.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

4th corp'l. left of 1st division.
CORNET CARRIES THE STANDARD, WITH A GUARD RIGHT AND LEFT.

2d lieut. 5th subd. 3d division, 2d div. of company. 25
4th serg. 6th sub. 31
2d sergant. 7th subd. 4th division. 37
2d corp’l. 8th sub. 43
3d corp’l. left of 2d div. viz. left of the line.

The above formation does not include subdivision officers, nor the cornet. Forty-eight men will be the formation. The guard of the cornet are not numbered in. In parading a troop of horse with the above number and formation, during the drill the divisions of companies will be designated as right and left divisions.

Officers one horse’s length advanced in front of the line. Captain two horse’s length advanced of the officer’s line.


1st lieut. right of 1st subd., and right of No. 1, front rank.
3d serg. cover 1st lieut. right of No. 1, rear rank.
1st serg. 2d subdivision, “ 7, front “
1st corp. cover 1st serg. “ 7, rear “
4th corp. left of 2d subdivision of the rear rank.
2d lieut. right 3d sub. 2d div. right of No. 13, front rank.
2d serg. right of 4th sub. “ 19, front rank.
2d corp’l. right of 4th sub. “ 19, rear rank.
2d corp’l. left of 4th sub. of the front rank.
To rank and size, the tallest men and horses are placed on the right. Sergeants and corporals on the right, until they are posted.

The covering officer on the right will be informed to that effect, and ordered to rein back. The privates are numbered from right to left, by front rear. Order —

Rear rank — by the right — rein back and cover — March! —
The rear will rein back, cover their right hand man, dressing by the officer on the right. Orderly sergeant, order —

Close to the right — and Dress!

The front and rear rank are numbered from right to left. To march the rear rank into rank entire from column, it will place the officers and the formation of the corps, as described on p. 65.

In numbering off, the front rank only will number themselves; the rear rank will be very attentive to this, and to all tellings off, which are always the same as in the front rank. Numbering, in cavalry, is so far useful, that every man should be spoken to by his number, and not by his name; and it requires only the addition of front, or rear rank, to make it perfectly understood. To form a corps in the dark, proving would be inexpedient; therefore, this should convince every man of the necessity of recollecting his number. When a man calls out his number, in numbering off, it should be sufficient information for him to know his immediate situation, without having it announced and proved.

7. Orderly Sergeant's duties, condensed.

1. Trumpeter sounds the assembly.

2. Orderly draws his sword.

3. Order! — Right Dress!

1. Men fall into line, non-commissioned officers on the right, according to rank.

3. Every man will turn his head to the right, and dress.
4. **Front!**

5. Officers are then stationed.
6. Number off from the right.

7. Call out the right of divisions by their numbers. Order, *Right of Divisions, proof.*
8. *As you were!*

9. Prove the left of divisions. Then prove the right and left of subdivisions, threes and twos, in like manner.

10. The line to be dressed, and the call sounded. The first sergeant will post himself two paces from the right, (in line) until the officers take their post in front.

11. Advance to the centre of the front, and face the line.

Order.

12. *Handle Swords!*
13. *Draw Swords!*
14. *Slope Swords!*
15. If the line again require dressing, the Orderly must again place himself on the right, and dress the line.
16. Advance again to the

4. Every man will turn his head to the front.

6. Every man will turn his head to the right, and when his right hand man calls out his number, will turn his head to the left, then call out his own number.

7. The right of divisions will hold up their right hand.

8. Drop your hand to its former position.

10. When the call is sounded, the officers will take their posts in front, facing the line.

12. Drawing swords, (p. 43.)
centre of the front, between the line and cornet. Order,

17. Carry Swords!

17. The subalterns about wheel and salute. The line will carry swords.

18. Advance by the left of the cornet, halt in front of the commanding officer, and salute.

19. Take your post, (by order of commanding officer,) on his left, passing along his right, and round his horse.

2. FILINGs.

Filings from the Right.

Filings are requisite in narrow roads and passes, where the ground is broken, and the movement in column would be difficult; rigid dressing and confinement can be dispensed with; files necessarily lengthen out a troop in a long train, and occupy much time in forming up. The movement with large bodies should be avoided if possible.

Where the ground will admit of it, the serrefiles march on their proper flank, keeping their relative positions. Where this is impracticable, they follow by files in the rear.

8. Filing from the Right Flank.

From the Right — File to Front — March!

Explanation. At the word march, the right file moves straight forward, the rest of the line must have their wheelings to the right, and will turn their horses as much to the right as possible without reining back, pressing the right, or moving forward; each file will follow successively, and march square to the ground the right file occupied, and wheel in the rear of the file in front.

Note. — The width of twos are not equivalent to the length of a horse. Twos cannot be halted and wheeled into line.
9. To the Left — Form Line — March!

Explanation. The leading file wheel to the left, advance one horse's length (in that direction) and halt; the others will advance until they arrive to their places alternately, wheel to the left, march into line, halt, dress by the right.

10. From the Right to the Rear File — March!

Explanation. The right file wheels to the right-about, the balance turn their horse's shoulders to the right (same as advancing to the front,) and alternately wheel and march up to the wheeling ground.

11. To the Right-about Form — March!

Explanation. The front wheels about, advance one horse's length and halt; the rest march into line close round the groups of those formed, wheel when arrived at their place, and march into line, halt and dress.

12. By Files from the Right — Left in Front — March!

Explanation. The right file advances from their ground square to the front one horse's length, wheels to the left; the others will stand fast, and advance to the front as their turn will successively come, wheel to the left, and march in the rear of the file preceding.

13. On the Right, Halt! — Form to the Front — March!

Explanation. The right file stands, the others move out obliquely to the left, taking care not to pass those in front. Halt, and dress as they successively arrive into line.

14. By files from the Right — Left in Rear — March!

Explanation. The right file will right about and pass in the rear, and near the groups of the horses; the files will alternately (as their turns come) right about, and follow near the groups of their file leaders.

15. Filing from the Left Flank.

Filings from the left must be practised exactly as those performed from the right, substituting throughout Left for Right.
16. 1. *Form the Left to the Front file—March!*
17. 2. *Right Form Line—March!*
18. 3. *From the Left to the Rear File—March!*
19. 4. *Leading File Left About, Form Line—March!*
20. 5. *By Files from the Left, Right in Front—March!*
21. 6. *Front Form Line—March!*
22. 7. *By Files from Left, Right in Rear—March!*

23. **Filing from the Centre.**

*From the Centre to the Front File—March!*

*Explanation.* Dressing is to the centre as the point to be filed from, the centre men advance their horses abreast of each other; the whole turn their horse's shoulders to the centre, and by following their file leaders, they will be in file by twos.

24. *Halt!*

25. *To the Front, Form—March!*

*Explanation.* The right and left flanks form upon the centre by opening out right and left successively, as the files arrive in the line formed; dressing is to the centre as the point formed upon.

26. *From the Centre to the Right—File—March!*

*Explanation.* The centre file moves out clear of the ranks and turns to the right. The men follow their leaders from the centre.

27. *To the Left, Form Line—March!*

*Explanation.* The leading file wheels to the left, advances a horse's length and halts. The men of the right flank go round them and form on their right, while those of the left flank form up to the left in their places, dressed by the centre. They will then be halted and fronted.

28. *From the Centre to the Left File—March!*

*Explanation.* This movement will be executed in the same manner as filing from the centre to the right.

29. *To the Right—Form Line—March!*

*Explanation.* See Instructions for forming to the left, (No. 27.)
30. From the Centre, retire by Files — March!

Explanation. The centre file reins back, the man attached to the left flank will right about wheel; the man attached to the right flank will left about wheel; the rest will flank inwards and wheel about by single files from the inward flanks of divisions, which will form twos to the rear.

31. Leading File about, Form Line — March!

Explanation. The front man attached to the right flank will left about, and the man attached to the left flank will right about, halt and dress. The rest will pass through (the interval) between the files to be formed upon; after they have passed through, open out right and left, and form into line.

Example.

32. Filing by Single Files from Both Flanks.

33. From both Flanks by Single Files to the Rear — March!

Explanation. The man on the right will right about, and the man on the left will left about and retire to the rear, observing their distance apart.

34. Former Front about, Form Line — March!

Explanation. The leading file of both flanks will inwards about wheel, halt and dress; the rear will pass round and form the line fronting the former front.

35. From both Flanks in the rear of the centre, retire — March!

Explanation. The single files from both flanks wheel about, pass along the groups of the horses in the rear until they meet in the centre, when they will form twos by wheeling together; this will place the whole in ranks of twos retiring.
EVOLUTIONS FOR CAVALRY.

Halt!

36. Form Line on the rear to the former Front — March!

Explanation. The members of the left flank will right about wheel, while those of the right flank will left about wheel; this will form twos. The rear will continue in twos until they are near the front, when they will open out right and left, and march into line, dressing by the centre.

37. From both Flanks by Single Files advance to the Front — March!

Explanation. Both files advance, preserving their distance apart. At the word the men will turn their horses from the centre towards the flanks to which they are attached, and march square to the ground.

38. Front, Form Line — March!

Explanation. The rear files will turn their horses obliquely and march into line, taking care not to pass their file leaders; never allow your horse, when forming to the front, to strike against another horse; it generally moves him out of his place, or causes him to kick.

39. From both Flanks by Single Files advance to the Front, in front of the Centre — March!

Explanation. The right file will advance to the front, wheel to the left, march along until he arrives in front of the centre, wheel to the right, while the file from the left will perform his duty by marching in a reverse manner; this will form Ranks of Twos, by bringing both flanks together.

40. Form Line on the Rear to the former Front — March!

Explanation. The right division will right about; the left, left about; the front file will open out, and wheel about; the rear will march through the interval, wheel right and left by opening out, march into line, dressing by the right. (Forming line and passing through the interval, see p. 72.)

3. Ranks of Threes.

The method of taking ground to the flanks, or retiring by
filing, has many and great defects, such as losing ground, and
drawing out the troops into a long train of files; taking up
much time, and exposing them to defeat if suddenly attacked.

Ranks of Fours are now practised, and if the author was
called upon for an explanation why Fours are introduced in the
place of Threes, I would undertake to say that he can produce
no argument to support the rank of fours. The width of four
horses are more than the length of one horse. To halt and
wheel into line from rank of fours, one man out of every four
would be crowded out; — to march at a distance suitable to
admit of a wheel into line, it would have the same tendency of
extending the troop, and drawing them out in a very irregular
and unbecoming appearance. A flank march by fours could
not be effected as expeditious nor as safe as ranks of threes.
The United States look up to foreign movements, and every
thing of a novelty; whether it be adequate for our use and de-
mand, or not, it is over-valued and imported, even should it be
to our injury. It is inexpedient to dwell on the exposition of
the rank of fours, and the expediency of introducing again the
rank of threes, which has already been banished from the ranks
of our Dragoons. We should place more value on Cavalry
than we have allowed them to be rated at; during disturbances
their value are enhanced; during the existence of peace they
should be taken into consideration. Cavalry has been under-
valued, even by militia officers, and not sufficiently esteemed
and encouraged by our executive department and officers in
authority. When these evils are allowed to exist, the cause
why their discipline are neglected, is sufficient acknowledgment
to all.

The movement by ranks of threes is expeditious and safe; it
simplifies manœuvres, enables troops or squadrons to move to
the flanks or rear, in line or columns, with as much ease as
infantry can by filing. It is applicable to the formation and
deployment of columns, which it renders easy and simple, and
completes, in half the time, what may be done by filing or
marching in fours, and without the least extension of the space occupied in line. In short, it obviates almost the whole of the difficulties which have hitherto embarrassed and retarded the movements of Cavalry, and renders them as easy in the execution as those of infantry.

The length of a horse upon an average is equal to the breadth of three, when formed at close files; each three can then turn on their own ground without interfering with the adjoining threes, and therefore a line or column may turn in this manner, either to flank or rear, (see figures on p. 18 and 19,) and move without any extension of its files and ranks.

The lesson may be taught in one or two ranks; in one rank there will be three; in two ranks six horses abreast, when wheeled to the flanks. The wheel by threes to the right, in two ranks, is represented by

Example.

\[ A \quad B \quad C \quad D \]

Explanation. \( A \) \( B \) and \( C \) \( D \) are two lines drawn through the centre of each rank before wheeling. \( L \) \( L \) \( L \) the left files. \( R \) \( R \) \( R \) the right files. The dotted parallelograms represent the threes of the front rank.

Note. — There will be no spaces between the threes after wheeling, as shown in the figure; openings are here left to exhibit the explanatory lines and references.

4. **Evolutions by Ranks of Threes.**

41. **Flank March by Threes.**

Threes — Right Wheel — March!

Explanation. Each flank wheels by threes to the right, Halt and Dress.
Column Forward — March!

Halt! — Wheel up.

The troop now fronts as before.

Threes — Left Wheel — March!

Column Forward — March!

Halt! — Wheel up.

42. **To advance to the front from a flank.**

43. **From the Right — to the Front — Advance by Threes — March!**

Explanation. The right threes will remain facing to the front. At the order, March! the right will advance, the balance of the ranks of threes wheel to the right, march to the ground occupied by the right wheel, immediately in the rear.

Note. — To parade with a rear rank, there will be six horses abreast. To form a column in a rank entire, the order should be to that effect. The threes will advance in rank entire.

The rear rank threes will then cover the front rank threes. The column will now have three men abreast.

This column is brought into a rank entire, by the wheel of threes to the left, (namely, Wheeling in line.)

This column is brought into two ranks by advancing the front rank threes, a horse's length; threes of the rear rank wheeling to the right, closing up, and wheeling up to left.

The same movements by threes to the left, will be obvious from the preceding explanation.

44. **Column Halt! — Threes — Left into Line — March!**

Halt! — Dress!

Explanation. This forms rank entire, if the column is in single entire. If it is in double rank, both ranks are formed.

The troop is now formed on an alignment at right angles with the original one.

45. **By Threes from the Right — Left in Front — March!**

Explanation. See Explanation for files, p. 69.
46. **To the Front, Form Line — March!**

*Explanation.* The front will continue their march unless ordered to halt. The rear will oblique to the left, marching into line, taking care not to pass those in front, or the line already formed.

**TO ADVANCE FROM BOTH FLANKS.**

47. **From both Flanks by Threes to the Front — Advance — March!**

*Explanation.* The threes on both flanks advance; the left threes to be conducted by the officer of the second division.

Threes will wheel outwards from the centre, march up to the ground occupied by the flanks, wheel in their rear and cover.

48. **Front, Form Line — March!**

*Explanation.* Threes of the Right flank will left oblique, while those of the Left flank will right oblique, form in their places to the front.

49. **From both Flanks by Threes, Retire — March!**

*Explanation.* The threes on the flanks wheel about. The right, right about; the left, left about. The balance wheel by threes to the flanks, namely: wheel outwards from the centre, cover the file leaders, and wheel successively when they arrive on the ground.

50. **Former Front, Form Line — March!**

*Explanation.* The front threes of the right flank, right about, advance one horse's length, halt and dress. The front threes of the left flank will left about, halt and dress, by the right flank threes. The rear of the column will successively march round the flanks they are attached to, march into line, halt and dress.

51. **From the inward Flanks of Divisions by Threes, advance to the Front — March!**

*Explanation.* The centre six men advance; three from the left of the first division, and three from the right of the second division. The balance of both divisions wheel by threes to the centre,
advance to the centre, wheel in the rear of the preceding threes, which will form a column of subdivisions; the officer on the right will advance and conduct the front of the column; the centre will not advance until the officer takes his post. The officer will advance in front, and when arrived to the centre, order, Centre Subdivision Forward; after they advance, place himself on their right.

52. Front, Form Line — March!

Explanation. The rear will open out by an oblique right and left. The officer conducting the front, (namely, the centre,) will leave his post and occupy his former post, by marking the alignment of the line.

53. By Threes, from the Right — Left in Rear — March!

Explanation. The right threes right about, right wheel, and march along the rear towards the left. The balance of the line will stand fast until their turn, and will successively wheel and march in the rear of the preceding threes.

54. Front Threes — Right about — Form Line — March!

Explanation. See p. 69, No. 4, for Twos.

Change of Front.

55. The line will change its front by a countermarch of threes from the right flank.

Commander. By Threes — Right Wheel — March!

Subdivision officer. Threes Right Wheel.

Commander. Countermarch — March!

Commander. Halt — Wheel up — March!

For Explanation see p. 19.

56. The line will retreat, by changing front by wheel of threes on their own ground.

By Threes, About Wheel — March!

Explanation. Each threes will right about. The officer attached to the right flank will occupy the left; now the right flank dressing by the (present) right flank.
Example.

57. Changing front by countermarching from both flanks by ranks of threes.

*Threes outward from Centre — Wheel — March!*

*Explanation.* The right wing threes wheel to the right; the left wing threes, to the left.

*Countermarch — On the Centre — March!*

*Explanation.* The right column of threes wheel to the right about, round the right marker (a) and on arriving at A, the threes wheel up to the left, by command of the officer leading and commanding the right wing. The left column of threes wheel about to the right, round the left marker (b) — halt at B — wheel up to the right. The left wing is then brought up, and dressed by the right.

Example.

Change of front, from right flank. See Example p. 19.

4. MOVEMENTS IN ECHELON.

For *Explanation* of Echelon Formation, see p. 11.

DIRECT ECHELON TO THE FRONT.

58. *From the Right, in Direct Echelon of Subdivisions — Subdivision Distances to the Front — March!*

*Explanation.* The right subdivision advances in a walk, directly to the front. When it has gained wheeling distance, the officer of the next subdivision commands his subdivision to
Forward — March! (naming his subdivision by its number, namely: second, third or fourth,) the right flank keeping in a line with the left of the subdivision preceding. Each subdivision will proceed in like manner when their respective right subdivision has gained wheeling distance.

Each subdivision preserves its front open, inclining neither to the right nor left.

Example of a Direct Echelon, right in front.

59. On the Right Subdivision — Front, Form Line — March!

The second, third and fourth subdivisions trot up and form on the left of the right subdivision, their officers respectively commanding, Slow Pace — Right — Dress! The commander then halts the troop.

69. Advance from the left, or from the right, and form line in the same manner. The leaders taking post on the left, which are now the directing flank. When the order does not designate the rear to form in a trot, they will continue in a brisk walk. The front will lessen its pace.

If the distance between the subdivisions when in echelon, is required to be more or less than subdivision distance, it must be named in the command. For example: In Echelon — Of Subdivisions — From the Right — at close order — or at — Paces. The distance is ascertained by the eye alone, and the officers must be quick in determining it.

61. Retiring in Echelon from the Left.

Retire in Echelon — Of Subdivisions — From the Left — March!

Explanation. The officer of the left subdivision commands,
EVOLUTIONS FOR CAVALRY.

Threes About — March! — Halt! — Dress! — March! The left subdivision wheels about by threes, walks off to the rear, its leader on the (present) right flank. As soon as the left subdivision marches off, the leader of the third subdivision commands,

Threes About — March! — Halt! — Dress!

And when the leading subdivision has gained wheeling distance, March!

The remaining subdivisions, will about wheel by threes to the rear and march off in the same manner.

62. To form line on the first subdivision to the former front, (the present rear.)

Halt! — Threes About!

On Right Subdivision — Form to Front — March!

The second, third and fourth subdivisions march up, form on the left of the first, and dress by the right.

Retiring from the Right is performed in the same manner.

Note. — The movements in echelon, when performed in the presence of an enemy, should be marked by a line of skirmishers.

63. Change of position in echelon to an oblique alignment advanced.

Subdivisions — Right — Quarter Wheel — March!

Explanation. When the subdivisions have completed the quarter wheel, their officers command, Halt! — Dress! The markers from the serrefile, march forward, and mark the new alignment, as shall be pointed out by the commander.

Forward — March!

The echelon AB, p. 82, will forward, and when the right flank of the right subdivision arrives at the point a, the commander orders,

Halt!

The whole halt in echelon. The commander then wheels the right subdivision up to the new alignment, and the officers successively order,
Left Flank — Forward — March!

The subdivisions wheel to the right, on a movable pivot, and on arriving at the alignment of the left flank of those already formed, (order as you arrive in the line,)

Halt! — Dress!

The troop is then formed on the new alignment. The movement is made to the left, by wheeling into echelon to the left, marching and forming by the left subdivision on similar principles.

Note. — When the new alignment must be formed by a greater wheel than the quarter wheel, the degree of wheel will be determined by the commander.

Example of an oblique alignment by the evolution of an oblique echelon.

A B, echelon; a, point to be formed upon, and dressed by E F, new alignment.

64. To form line to the right, from echelon, when in direct echelon, and the line to be formed on the front subdivision to the right. The front subdivision will be wheeled to the right, the 2d, 3d and 4th, will continue in echelon until they arrive opposite the left flank of the (formed) line, before a wheel is made.

65. To form line to the left on the 4th subdivision, from a direct echelon, the different subdivisions will be wheeled to the left, march into line, halt, and dressed by the right.

66. To form line from a direct echelon on the 4th subdivi-
sion. Order, Column, Halt! — The rear subdivisions stand fast; the 3d, 2d, and 1st subdivisions, threes, about wheel. Forward, March! After arriving in line, their respective officers will order, Halt! Dress!
Threes, about wheel. Halt! Dress!

67. Advancing in direct echelon of subdivisions, from the right of divisions, (when in column of divisions,) From the right of Divisions, by Subdivisions, in direct Echelons, advance to the front — March!

Explanation. — The subdivision on the right of the first subdivision will advance square to the front. When the subdivision distance is gained, the 2d subdivision will advance. When the distance of a subdivision is gained, the right subdivision of the 2d division will advance; the 4th subdivision will advance as soon as the suitable distance is gained.

Example.

![Diagram of echelon formation]

68. The positions of the subdivisions can be reversed by an oblique march to the left of the 1st and 3d subdivisions, and the 2d and 4th oblique to the right. Order, The 1st and 3d Subdivisions will left oblique, the 2d and 4th will right oblique. Subdivisions right and left oblique, — March! After the oblique is made, order, Forward — March! The column will be thrown in its former position, by the oblique in like manner. The column will retire in column of Echelon! — The 1st and 3d subdivisions will left about, the 2d and 4th subdivisions will right about.
Subdivisions — Right and Left About Wheel — March!

The former front can be resumed by about wheel and forming divisions.

69. Advancing in direct echelon of subdivisions, from the right of divisions, (from line.)

From the Right of Divisions — by Subdivisions — in Direct Echelons, Advance to the Front — March!

Example.

```
  3 1
4 2
```

70. Advancing from the right and left flank of the first division, and from the centre of the second division by ranks of threes in direct echelon. (This is from column of divisions.)

Example.

```
  4
3 1
2
```

Explanation. Number 1, 2, 3, and 4, are the right of subdivisions. Each has four men, the officer of each subdivision being thrown out; consequently when in threes, the officer will form the fourth man. The three in the centre are the guards of the standard, the standard bearer in the centre.

71. To take ground to the flank and front, by an echelon movement.

By Subdivisions — Right — Half Wheel — March!

Explanation. The subdivisions will half wheel to the right, (officers on the right of their respective subdivisions.)

Halt! — Dress!

The whole halt in echelon.

March!
Each subdivision advances on lines perpendicular to its front, the directing flanks keeping on a line parallel to the original alignment, and directly in the rear of the files of the subdivisions on the right, through which the perpendicular pass.

_Halt!_

72. When halted, the directing flanks are to be on the line X Z, parallel to the original alignment.

_Left — Wheel into Line — March!_

The wheel into line completed, subdivision officers respectively command,

_Halt! — Dress!_

The new alignment, if the movement has been properly executed, will be parallel to the original front.

The movement to the left, being executed on similar principles, requires no explanation.

Example.

Oblique Marching,

Is to gain ground to the front and flank, parallel to its former position.

To be in column, and the order is given

73. _Head of the Column, (Right or Left) Oblique — March!_

The front alone will oblique, the rear will successively oblique as they arrive on the ground from whence the first oblique was made. When the order is given

_Head of the Column, Forward — March!_

The front alone will advance, the remainder will advance successively; as they arrive on the ground to advance square to the front (and cover.)
When an order is given

74. **Column** — (Right or Left) *Oblique* — **March**!

The whole column will oblique to the given point, until ordered

**Column** — **Forward** — **March**!

The whole will turn their horses square to their former front. Advancing, retiring, and wheeling by subdivisions. Increasing and diminishing the front.* Wheeling from subdivisions into line.

**ADVANCING FROM THE RIGHT OF THE LINE.**

75. *From the Right by Subdivisions, advance to the Front* — **March**!

*Explanation.* The first subdivision advances, on the walk, directly to the front.

**Subdivisions** — **Right Wheel** — **March**!

The above order will be given by the officers of the remaining subdivisions. They will wheel to the right, and dress. Their officers will command **March**! as the subdivisions arrive on the ground from which the first marched — they successively command

**Left Wheel** — **Forward**!

Should any space be lost, each subdivision, after wheeling to the left, will trot up to its respective distance.

Column of subdivisions will retire by about wheel on their own ground, (rear in front.)

76. **Column will retire, rear in front, by about wheel of Subdivisions** — **March**!

*Explanation.* Each subdivision officer will order

**Right about** — **March**!

The column will be halted and wheeled into line.

**Column, Halt**

77. **Column** — **Right Wheel into Line** — **March**!

* See *Mounted Drill*, p. 40.
EVOLUTIONS FOR CAVALRY.

This will bring the former front (viz. the present rear to its former position) on the Right.

Line wheeling into subdivisions, right in front.

78. **Line — Right in Front by Subdivisions — Right Wheel — March**

Each subdivision officer will order, **Right Wheel — March! — Halt — Dress.**

The column will stand fast until ordered **Column — Forward — March!**

The whole column at the order will forward, column of subdivisions retiring and reforming successively in the rear.

79. **Subdivisions successively retire from both Flanks by single files, and reform in the rear — March!**

*Explanation.* The front subdivision will retire by single files, and when arrived in the rear form inwards about; the remaining files will form in their respective places.

Each subdivision will retire as soon as they are thrown in front, and form in like manner.

When the order is given, and the word *successively* is omitted, the front alone will retire, and the remainder will continue in column, unless otherwise ordered.

To retire and reform in the rear from the right of subdivisions (alone), is done on the same principle.

80. **Column retiring successively and reforming to the rear. Right in front.**

The column will retire from the right by subdivisions successively, by single files, and reform to the rear.

*Retire and re-form to the Rear — March!*

*Explanation.* The front will retire from the right, and after arriving to the rear of the column, wheel to the right, then to the left, the rear files of that subdivision will form on the left of the leading file, facing and retreating to the rear.

As soon as the rear file in retiring passes the next subdivision, the officer will order — **By Single Files — Retire — March!** and will reform in the rear of the subdivision preceding him.
CAVALRY DRILL.

Note. — It will here be observed that in this order it is reforming to the rear, viz. facing to the rear.

In the preceding order it was forming in the rear, which is successively throwing the different subdivisions to the front. The column still continuing on the march in the same direction. This is practised in charging or firing in the streets by subdivisions, and retreat to and reform in the rear, that opportunity may be afforded to the retreated portion of the column to reload.

TO INCREASE THE FRONT.

81. Form Divisions to the Front — March!

Explanation. The first and third subdivisions will continue their march square to the front. The officers of the second and fourth subdivisions will order Left Oblique — March! They will continue their oblique until their right is opposite the left flank of the subdivision to be formed upon. Order

Forward — March!

When formed into division, order Right — Dress!

TO FORM LINE TO THE FRONT.

82. Form Line — March!

Explanation. The second division officer will order

Second Division, Left Oblique — March!

The division will oblique until its right is parallel with the left of the first division. The second division officer will order

Forward — March!

When in line, the officer on the right will order

Right — Dress!

To increase the front when the left of the column is near a wall or side of a road, the right (viz. the first and third subdivisions) will make the oblique to the right; the second and fourth will continue their advance square to the front.

The commanding officer will order

83. Form Divisions by an Oblique of the First and Third Subdivisions — March!

The officers of the first and third subdivisions will order
Evolutions for Cavalry.

Right Oblique — March!

The officers of the second and fourth subdivisions will order

Forward — March!

The second and fourth subdivisions will increase their pace. When the first and third have gained sufficient ground, the commander will order

Forward — March!

84. To form line to the front it is executed in the same manner; the first division will oblique to the right, the second will continue advancing square to the front.

Note. — There are many evolutions for Ranks of Threes that can be practised by subdivisions, which it is needless to relate in this portion of the drill.

Remarks. In forming line from column or increasing the front of a column, that portion forming should perform their duty compactly, and never allow the horse on the right to strike the horse on the left of those already formed. And those already formed never should allow their horse on the left flank to occupy any other position than that which belongs to him, viz. square in the ranks. If he turns himself the least out of the way, he will throw those, marching up, out of their places.

85. To form line from column to the right about.

Head of the Column, Right about — Form Line — March!

The front subdivision wheel to the right about, advance a horse’s length, halt and dress.

The remainder of the column will advance until passed the groups of those formed, wheel to the right, and march until the right has passed the left of those to be formed upon, wheel compactly (square) to the right, march into line, halt and dress by the right.

Forming divisions from line by a wheel and march of threes. Increasing and diminishing the front in changing the line of march without a previous halt. Forming divisions from rank of
threes by rights of divisions, flanking to the right. Divisions countermarching and retiring, rear in front, without a previous halt.

Forming divisions by wheeling in ranks of threes. Right of divisions marching to the rear. Halt and wheel into column.

86. Form divisions from line by a wheel and march of threes to the rear, halting and wheeling in divisions.

Commander. *By Threes — Right Wheel — March!*

Each division officer will repeat the order

*Threes — Right Wheel!*

*Form Column of Divisions — March!*

*Explanation.* The front (or right threes) of divisions will right wheel, march square out, after leading out the length of the division, halt and left wheel up in divisions.

*Example.* 3 dots in the centre is the standard.

```
[Diagram of formation]
```

To march into line and occupy the former ground.

87. The column will deploy into line by threes, from the left of divisions wheeling, and march on the former ground occupied by the line.

*By Threes — Left Wheel — March!*

Threes will left wheel, division officers will shift to the left of their divisions, left wheel, march out on the former ground.

*Halt — Dress!*

Division officers will resume their former posts.

*Right, into Line, Wheel — March!*

Officer on the right, order, *Right — Dress!*

Wheeling by divisions, and changing line of march.
88. By Divisions — Right Wheel — March!
Each division officer will order (first or second division)
   Right Wheel — March!
   Halt — Dress! (after the wheel.)
   Column Forward — March!
The whole will move at the word march.
89. The line of march will be changed to the right divisions reduced to ranks of threes.
   First Division, by Threes — Right Wheel — March!
The first division officer will order
   Threes, Right Wheel — March!
The second division officer, as soon as the right flank arrives where the first march from, will order
   Threes, Right Wheel — March!
Change the line of march to the right, front increased to divisions.
90. The line of march will be changed to the right threes increased to divisions.
   Right — Form Divisions — March!
Explanation. The leading threes wheel to the right, the remainder of the first division form on their left and continue the march. The second division will be formed in the same manner on the ground the first division formed upon.
91. Line of march be changed to the left divisions reduced to ranks of threes.
   From the Right of Divisions successively by threes — Left in Front — Countermarch — March!
   Explanation. The officer of the first division will order (first division) Halt! — Threes from the Right — Forward!
   After having advanced clear of the front of the division, order
   Left Wheel — March!
   The remainder of the division will stand fast until they successively march by threes (as their turn arrives) square to the front, covering the threes preceding.
The second division will advance to the ground occupied by the first, halt, and countermarch in the same manner.

92. Line of march changed to the left. Ranks of threes increased to divisions.
Line of march changed to the left by wheeling into divisions to the left.

Left in Divisions — Wheel — March!

Explanation. The first division wheel up from threes into the division without halting, by the division officer ordering

First Division — Left, Wheel Up — March!

The second division will march up to the ground, and wheel up in the rear of the first division.

Column, Halt!

Column — Left into Line — Wheel — March!

93. Form column of divisions from rank of threes, by marching to the right.

The line is now wheeled in ranks of threes. Divisions will be formed to the front by rights of divisions marching to the right and wheeling in divisions.

Form Divisions — March!

Explanation. The threes which are on the right of divisions wheel to the right, march square out the length of their divisions. The division officer will order

Left, Wheel Up!

The troop will now be in column of divisions; each division will halt and dress, until ordered

Column, Forward — March!

94. The column will retire, rear in front, by divisions, countermarching on their own ground.

Column, retire, Rear in Front by Divisions, changing their fronts by Countermarching by Threes — March!

Explanation. Each division officer will order Threes, Right Wheel! and the front threes will again right wheel and march immediately to the ground occupied by the left, halt, and wheel
EVOLUTIONS FOR CAVALRY.

up. The column will halt and each division be dressed. (See Cut, p. 19.)

Column, Forward — March!

Note. — Retiring and re-forming to the rear, also in the rear, see pp. 87, 91, as practised by subdivisions.

95. Receiving and Lodging the Standard.

The standard is always lodged with the commanding officer. The cornet will carry the standard, unless there is a deficiency of officers. It is then given to a sergeant or corporal. When the corps is in front of the commander's dwelling, marquee or tent, the commissioned officers are ordered to their parade posts in front. The cornet (or standard bearer) when ordered to advance and get the standard, will be attended by the first sergeant. When the standard is brought to the door, the cornet will salute, return his sword, and receive from the first sergeant the standard. At the time the standard appears, the commander will order Carry Swords, trumpet will sound. After the cornet receives the standard, he will left about and pass immediately through the centre to the rear, about wheel and take his place in rank. As soon as he passes the line (to the rear) commander orders Slope Swords! Trumpet will then cease sounding, the first sergeant will pass through the centre to the rear, and take his former post. Officers will then be ordered to their posts in line.

When a new standard is introduced, or a number of new recruits on parade, as the standard is the rallying point, it is marched round the left flank in the rear, round the right flank, passing between the subalterns and the commanding officer. Swords then are not carried until it arrives in front of the right flank. In that instance, when it is received by the cornet, the trumpet will not sound until it passes in front from right to left. After it passes in front, the cornet will again march round the left flank, and pass in the rear until arrived to his post in the centre of the line — he will then march into line. Swords will
CAVALRY DRILL.

be sloped immediately as the standard arrives opposite the left flank. Trumpets will also cease sounding. The same form is observed in lodging the standard. (See Formation of Standard Escort. Salute with the Standard.)

96. Funeral Honors.

The corps will be marched to the house, marquee, or tent, where the corpse is lodged, and wheeled into line, facing the house, marquee or tent. The corps will be under the command of the first sergeant. Pall bearers of equal rank with the deceased. If a private, on the coffin are to be placed his uniform jacket and cap. If a non-commissioned officer, jacket, cap and sash. If a commissioned officer, jacket, cap, sword and pistols, are to be placed on the lid of the coffin. Also the horse of the deceased commissioned officer, led by a member of the corps; the horse to be covered with a black cloth, the boots reversed, the heels towards the horse’s head, the top of the boots to be tied with black ribbon to the saddle in such a manner as to keep them steady.

On the appearance of the corpse, the officer commanding the escort will command

*Carry Swords!*

Trumpets and bugles will play an appropriate air until the corpse is placed in the hearse. When the officer will order *Slope Swords!*

*By Subdivisions (or Threes) — Left Wheel — March!*

**ORDER OF THE PROCESSION.**

1. The military.
2. The music in the rear of the military.
3. The horse in mourning.
4. The corpse, pall bearers on each side.
5. Mourners.
6. Friends.

After the column is marched in front of the corpse, order
Evolutions for Cavalry.

Carry Swords! — Reverse Swords!

Swords are reversed under the right arm, the point downwards, and the right hand grasping the hilt.

Note. Reversing swords can be dispensed with, and march with slope swords.

The column will be marched at slow pace, music playing a dead march; and on reaching the grave, form the line with the right next to the burying ground, order

Halt!

Column — Right into Line — Wheel — March!

When the corpse arrives at the flank next to the corpse, order (viz. the left flank,)

Carry Swords!

Remain at the carry until the whole procession passes. After the performance of the funeral services, return swords and draw pistols. Fire three rounds, and return from the burying ground. The music will not begin to play until the escort is clear of the enclosure or burying ground.

If the burying ground is situated in such a manner as to prohibit a troop of horse from entering without riding over the graves,—after the procession has passed in, the men can be dismounted and march in, swords in their scabbards, march near enough to hear the solemnities of the service, and dispense with the firing; returning immediately after the service, mounting at the gate where the horses were left. The commanding officer will again resume the command, and march off at quick time.
DIVISION THIRD.

SUBDIVISION THIRD.

EVOLUTIONS SUITABLE FOR A SQUADRON OR REGIMENT OF CAVALRY.

CONTENTS.

Organization and Formation of the Squadron.

A Regiment.

Evolutions for a Squadron or Regiment.

1. Changes of position in line.
   1. By direct march to the front or rear.
   2. By oblique march to the right or left.
   3. By a quarter wheel of any part of the quarter circle on the centre.

2. The squadron advancing.

3. Line retiring by about wheel of threes.

4. Form former front, threes, about wheel.

5. Inclining to the right.

6. Squadron, right quarter wheel.

7. Forming new alignment by wheel of threes.

Change of Position on the Centre.

8. Right half squadron, threes, about.

9. Wheel on the centre.

10. Right half squadron, threes, about.

11. Left half squadron, advance in line.

12. Half squadrons, about wheel.

Wheeling in Column from Line.

13. Wheeling by subdivisions from line.

14. Column wheeling into line.

15. Wheeling by divisions from line.

16. Column wheeling into line.

Wheeling by Half Squadrons.

17. Half squadrons, right wheel.

18. Column, wheel into line.

Formation and Deployment of Column.

19. Forming close column on the right, right in front.

20. Deploy to the left, into line.

21. Close column on the left, left in front.

22. Deploy to the right, into line.

23. Close column on a centre division, right in front.

24. Deploying from centre.

25. Close column on the right, left in front.

26. Deploying to the right.

27. Open column on the right, right in front.

28. Deploy to the left from open column, from line on the right.

29. Double column of divisions, formed on the centre, at division distances.

30. Deploying from the centre, forming line on the centre.

31. Form line to the rear, on rear division.

Movements in Column.

32. Countermarch and change of front, in open column of divisions.

33. Rear of the column brought to the front.

34. Direct march of the column.

35. Flank march of the column.

36. Forming column from a flank march, rear in front.

37. Change of position in column, by a flank march of its divisions.

Echelon Movements.

38. Change of position on the right flank, the left brought forward, eighth of a circle.

39. Change of position on the left flank, the right brought forward, eighth of a circle.

40. Change position on the left flank, the right thrown back, eighth of a circle.

41. Change position, in open column, the left thrown back, eighth of a circle.

42. Change position on the right flank, the left brought forward, quarter of a circle, by open column of divisions, in echelons.

43. Change position on the left flank, the right brought forward, quarter of a circle, by open column of divisions, in echelons.

44. Change position to the rear, by the flank march of divisions to the rear.

Changes of Front.

45. Change of front, by countermarching.
FORMATION OF A SQUADRON.

in open column of divisions, from the right flank.
46. Change of front on the centre by the operation of open column on the centre.

Passage of Defiles.
47. Passage of a defile in front, by divisions from the centre.
48. Passage of a defile in front, by ranks of threes, from the centre.
49. Passage of a defile in front, by files from the centre.
50. Passage of a defile in front, by threes, from a flank.
51. Passage of a defile in the rear, by threes, from both flanks, retiring to the centre.

Advancing from Line.
52. Advancing from a flank, by divisions.
53. Form line to the front, from column of divisions.
54. Advancing from line, by subdivisions.

Passage of Obstacles.
55. Pass obstruction in front of right half squadron.
56. Pass obstruction in front of the left flank.

Evolutions for Attack.
57. Attack of infantry, part of the line formed into column.
58. Attack in double column, from the centre, upon a line of infantry, whose wings are covered.
59. The squadron advances in line, passes broken ground, and charges in line.
60. Attack by right half squadron, the left supports, in column.

Skirmishing.
61. To skirmish from both flanks.
62. Dispersing, attack in pelmell, and rally.
63. Disperse to the rear in retreat.
64. Attack in line, to the front.
65. Retiring in line.
66. Attack to the front, in line of impression.
67. Attack in front, in single potency.

68. Attack in double potency.
69. Attack in echelon of half squadrons, to the front.
70. Squadron retires in echelon, from the left, and forms oblique line on the left half squadron.
71. Attack to the front, and pursuit from the flanks.
72. Attack by the two centre divisions. The remaining divisions support in echelon.
73. Squadron marching right in front, by files, (or threes) form two lines for a front attack.
74. The squadron retires in two lines.
75. The squadron retires in ranks of fours in the rear of the centre, by filing from the flanks of half squadrons.
76. Passage of a line of infantry, by filing from the right of divisions.
77. Passage of a line of infantry, by threes, from the centre, and charge to the front.
78. Retreat of the line by the wheel of divisions.
79. The squadron advance to attack the enemy’s right, is obstructed, takes ground to the right, and charge the left flank.
80. The squadron in line, the front rank attacks with pistols, the rear rank supports with swords.
81. Squadron retires in the chequered retreat of divisions.
82. The front of the column of divisions is changed by countermarching, from the right of divisions, on their own ground; column inclines to the left, enters a new alignment; halts, and wheels into line.
83. To form column of divisions from ranks of threes, rear in front, and charge.

Increasing and Diminishing the Front.
See Mounted Drill, p. 35.

" Evolutions for Cavalry, p. 86.

Organization and Formation of a Squadron.

A squadron consists of four troops, and not less than two.

A squadron is commanded by a major, and in his absence the command devolves on the senior captain.

The major appoints his own staff.

The staff consists of an adjutant, quartermaster, paymaster, sergeant-major, surgeon, farrier, saddler, and blacksmith.

The squadron is formed into two half squadrons, designated
as right and left half squadrons. The half squadrons are divided in divisions, subdivisions, threes, and right and left files.

The right half squadron, in numbering off, will number from the left to the right.

The left half squadron will number from right to left. Thus,—

When ordered to *Tell off by threes, from the Centre*, the whole dress to the centre; and the right half squadron begin by *Left, Centre, Right*, from the centre to the right, while the left rank off from the centre, (viz. their right) by *Right, Centre, Left*, to the left flank; all preserve their dressing to the centre.

In forming the divisions and subdivisions they will be numbered from right to left, and the rights and lefts proved to each man the same as in forming a single troop.

*Squadron of four Troops, in double rank.*

```
   M
  2 4 3 1 2 4 3 1
   2 4 3 1 2 4 3 1
   5 5 5 5 5 5 5 5
```

T B 20 paces in the rear.

M. Major.
1. Captain.
2. First Lieutenant.
4. Cornet.

Q. M. Quarter Master.
P. M. Paymaster.
S. Surgeon.
5. Officers in serrefile rank.

T. B. Trumpeters and Buglers.

A. Adjutant.

S. M. Sergeant Major, on a line with the front rank, two
paces from the left of the line; he is charged with the same functions as the adjutant, when the march is in line, with the guide left.

The troops acting together in squadron will be equalized. The standard, when in line, will be in the centre, and attached to the right half of the squadron, (having a guard right and left.)

When three troops are joined for exercise and manœuvre, they may form a squadron of six divisions, twelve subdivisions; each troop may be considered a manœuvring division, like that of a half squadron. In exercising by half squadrons the centre troop will be divided in the centre, and the second captain will change his post for the time being, and command the left half squadron. Three troops to be formed in squadron; they will be designated as 1st, 2d and 3d troop, or right centre, and left troop, in the words of command.

If the standards are deposited at some distance from the parade ground, they are brought by an escort, consisting of a second lieutenant, commanding escort, a subdivision, divided in two, (threes) each three has a non-commissioned officer on their right, the cornet in the centre, with a private each side of him as a guard. The escort will march in ranks of threes. (See Escort.)

Organization and Formation of a Regiment.

A regiment consists of two or more squadrons, commanded by a colonel, and two other officers associated with him, viz. a lieutenant colonel, and major, or two majors.

The colonel appoints his own staff.

The staff consists of an adjutant, quartermaster, paymaster, sergeant major, surgeon, assistant surgeon, quarter master's sergeant, judge advocate, farrier, saddler, and blacksmith.

The lieutenant colonel, or senior major, commands the right wing; the major commands the left wing.

For three squadrons to be exercised together as a regiment, they will be designated as 1st, 2d, and 3d squadrons, in the
formation; also, in the words of command, when an evolution is to be performed by squadrons. They can also be designated as right, centre, and left squadrons. The centre of the line will be the division of the right and left wings.

An interval of about eight yards, is generally allowed between the squadrons; this will permit two ranks of cavalry, in threes, to pass through without interfering.

The quartermaster's sergeant will be posted behind the adjutant, on the line of the rear rank.

The general guides of the right and left are placed in the rear rank of file-closers, in rear of the sergeant-major, and quartermaster-sergeant.

The trumpeters, formed in two ranks, are posted twenty-five paces in rear of the centre of the regiment.

The colonel will take post twenty-five paces in front of the centre.

The quartermaster, the surgeon, and his assistant, drawn up in one rank, from right to left, will be posted on the left of the colonel, three paces in his rear.

The colonel, if absent, will be replaced by the lieutenant colonel, and the latter by the major. If all the field officers be absent, the senior captain will command; but if either of the field officers be present, the senior captain will not be called upon to act as a field officer, except in case of evident necessity.

The lieutenant-colonel will be twelve paces in front of the centre of the right wing.

The major twelve paces in front of the centre of the left wing.

The adjutant and sergeant-major will aid the lieutenant-colonel, and major respectively, in the manoeuvres, by superintending the posts of markers, &c.

Evolutions for a Squadron, or Regiment.

1. Changes of position of the squadron in line.

The squadron may change its position, without breaking into column.
First. By the direct march to the front or rear, by which means it will be parallel, and perpendicular to the old line.

Second. By the oblique march to right or left, which will bring it parallel, but not perpendicular, with the old line.

Third. By a wheel of any part of the quarter circle on the centre, or on either flank, by which means the new line will intersect the old one, or its prolongation, at some particular point.

In this direct march of the squadron, both the front and rear ranks dress to their centres.

All marches in line should be particularly observed, that pressing to the dressing point should be avoided.

2. The Squadron will advance — Eyes centre — March! — The flank officers are to attend to the dressing, and be particularly attentive to lead straight, and at a steady regular pace. If the cornet finds himself pressed upon, he must advance his hand, or his sword, if it is drawn; and every man in the ranks must then press from the centre till he gets his prescribed interval of six inches from the file he dresses to.

3. Halt — Threes About — March!

By the Centre — Forward — March!

Troops are not to stand still an instant, when they are fronted to the rear, or put about. For the same reason they ought always to be fronted again as soon as halted, (when on the old ground.)


(centre of course.)

5. Squadron — Right incline — March!

This is seldom ordered from a halt; but when that is the case, every man in the ranks turns his horse’s shoulders to the right as much as his interval will admit of, at the caution, and dresses to the right. He will still be six inches from his right hand man, and the whole move steadily in that direction at March! The flank officer on the right leads on two objects,
and must be very careful not to incline too much, nor too little, otherwise the line cannot keep parallel with its old front.

_Halt — Front — Eyes Centre._

If the march was correctly conducted, the squadron will now have outflanked its former position to the right, and still preserved the same front.

The squadron may then be put about by threes, incline to the right, with the rear rank in front, and occupy the old ground.

Inclining to the left must be performed exactly in the same manner, substituting left for right in the word of command.

The squadron may front to all points of the compass, by wheels on one of its flanks, or on its centre. A squadron officer ought to be able to place it instantly in the direction required, by the regular word of command for that purpose; we shall suppose a squadron fronting to the north, with its right and left flanks due east and west, and resting on obstacles which prevent it from wheeling about.

6. _Squadron — Right Quarter — Wheel — March! — Halt — Dress!_

This will front it to the N. N. E.; a half wheel fronts it to the N. E.; three quarters wheel to the E. N. E.; a wheel, or the quarter circle, to the east. In like manner,

_Squadron — To the Left — Quarter Wheel — March! — Halt — Dress!_

Will front it to the N. N. W., a half wheel to the N. W., three quarters wheel to the W. N. W., and a wheel, or the quarter circle, to the west.

The wheels backwards on the left flank, front the squadron to the same point of the compass as those forward on the right flank, and vice versa; but it must be observed, that all wheels backwards beyond a quarter wheel, in cavalry, are best performed by putting the squadron about by threes, wheeling forwards with the rear rank in front, halting and fronting. — Thus,
Squadron Evolutions.


It will now stand fronting to the same point as if half wheeled forwards on the right flank.

Note. — All squadron wheels, the front rank dress to the centre, and the rear rank to the wheeling flank. All changes of position of a squadron upon one of its flanks, when more than a quarter wheel, are best and easiest made, (by volunteer cavalry,) by placing a marker in the direction required, or the first threes may be wheeled in the direction. To wheel the eighth or sixteenth of a wheel to the right, the squadron officer orders,

7. First Three on the Right — Left Shoulders — Forward — March!

When in the direction required, he halts them and prolongs the new alignment himself, or directs the flank officer to do it at a few yards from them.

By the Right — Dress — the Line — March! — Halt — Dress!

The whole move up and dress by the right.

Change of Position on the Centre.

The next change of position is on the centre of the squadron, by which it may be fronted to all the points of the compass on its own ground, if it has the extent of a half squadron in front and rear of its position.

8. Right Half Squadron by Threes — About — March!

The half squadron now front different ways.

9. On the Centre — Right About — Wheel — March!

Dressing is to both flanks; and the centre man or rather the centre threes of the inward flanks must describe a small circle, in order to take each other's places very slowly, as the flanks come round.

CAVALRY DRILL.

Halt! — Dressing is again to the centre, and the squadron now stands regularly fronted to the south, its former rear.

Wheels on the centre are not easily performed with correctness, and not often practised, except to change the front of a squadron on its own ground, and this may be done as quickly, as follows:

11. Left Half Squadron — Advance by the Right — March!

And when advanced the full extent of the half squadron,

12. Halt — Half Squadrions — About inwards, and Front to the Rear — March!

The right half wheel to the left about, the left half wheel to the right about, they wheel into each other’s ground; the left advances by the command of the flank officer, march up to the left flank of the right half, and dress, both to the right.

WHEELING INTO COLUMN FROM LINE.

13. Wheeling by subdivisions.

Commander. The line will wheel to the right by subdivisions.

" Subdivisions — Right Wheel — March!

Subdivision officer. Subdivisions — Right Wheel — March!

" Halt — Dress!

The column will stand fast until ordered by the commander,

Column — Forward — March!

When ordered to halt, the whole halt at the order, and each subdivision officer dresses his subdivision.

Commander. Column — Halt — Dress!

14. To wheel into line.

Commander. Column — Left into Line — Wheel — March!

Subdivision officers. Left Wheel — March!

" Halt — Dress!

15. Wheeling by divisions.

Commander. The line will wheel to the right by divisions.

" Divisions — Right Wheel — March!

Division officers. Divisions, (first, second, or third,) Right Wheel — March!
Division officers. *Halt — Dress!*

Markers are not requisite to mark the wheels of divisions, nor any smaller bodies. The division officer will give the order, *Halt!* when they judge the quarter circle is completed.

16. To wheel into line.
   Commander. The column will wheel into line.
   "Column — Left into Line — Wheel — March!
   Division officers. (First, second or third) *Divisions — Left Wheel — March!*
   Subdivision officer. *Halt — Dress!*

**WHEELING BY HALF SQUADRONS.**

17. Commander. The line will wheel to the right, in column of half squadrons.
   Commander. *Half Squadrons — Right Wheel — March!*
   Half Squadron Officer. *Half Squadrons — Right into line — Wheel — March!*
   Half Squadron Officer. *Halt — Dress!*

**Explanation.** At the order of the commander to wheel, the flank serrefile sergeants, (who were detailed for that duty as markers,) trot out and give the square of the wheel; at the *Halt — Dress!* they return to their places in the rear. If there is an officer on the left of the half squadrons, they will advance and act in the capacity of markers; the flank will march up and form the wheel.

18. To wheel into line.
   Commander. The column will wheel into line.
   "Column — Left into Line — Wheel — March!
   Half Squadron officer. (Right or Left) *Half Squadron — Left Wheel — March!*
   Half Squadron officer. *Halt — Dress!*

**FORMATION AND DEPLOYMENT OF COLUMNS.**

In the order for the formation of column from line, it will always be designated, whether close column or open column; if by divisions, whether it is division distance or close column.

13
19. Close column on the right, the right in front.
Commander. Form close column of divisions, by the right — the right in front.

Commander. Division, Right — Quarter Wheel — March!
Division officers. Division, Right — Quarter Wheel — March!
“ ‘Halt — Dress!”

Commander. Threes — Right Wheel — March!
Division officer. Halt — Dress!

Commander. Forward — March!
Division officer. Halt — Wheel up — Dress!

Explanation. At the command, Quarter Wheel! all except the right division wheel the quarter circle to the right, halt and dress in echelon. At the March! by the commander, the divisions, led by their officers, march into the rear of the right division, halt and dress. Division officers order

Left into Column — Wheel — March!

Example.

$\text{R L}$ represents the line wheeled in echelon, formed by quarter wheels, the divisions pointing to their places in the column $\text{R M}$.

20. Deploy to the left into line.

Commander. Column will deploy to the left into line.

“Threes — Left Wheel — March!

Division officers. Halt — Dress!

Commander. March!

Division officers. Halt — Wheel up — March! — Halt — Dress!
Explanation. At the caution to deploy, two markers will align themselves on the front of the first division R L. The first division stands fast; the others, having wheeled by threes to the left, move out to the left at the word March! by the commander; when the second division has gained its front, it halts, wheels up, marches into the alignment R L, halts and dress. The remainder of the column proceed in the same manner.

Example.

21. Close column on the left, the left in front.
   Commander. Form close column of divisions on the left, the left in front.
   Commander. Divisions — Left Quarter — Wheel — March!
   Division officers. Halt — Dress!
   “ “ Threes — Left Wheel — March! — Halt — Dress!
   Commander. March!

Explanation. The left division stand fast, the remainder will left quarter wheel; (the formation is similar to forming on the right.) The column will be formed in rear of the left division.

22. Column deploying to the right into line.
   Commander. Column will deploy to the right, and form line on the first division.
   Commander. Threes — Right Wheel — March!
   Division officers. Halt — Dress!
   Commander. March!
Division officers. **Halt — Wheel up — March! — Halt — Dress!**

**Explanation.** The rear division will advance and occupy the ground of the first; the remainder will deploy to the right, without it is ordered to form on the first; the rear will then deploy to the left, and the front stand fast.

23. Close column on a central division, right in front.
Commander will name the fifth or fourth division to be formed upon.

Commander. **Form close Column — Of Divisions — On the Centre — Right in Front — March!**

Division officers. **Divisions, Right — Quarter Wheel!**

" " **Halt — Dress!**

Right Squadron Officer. **Threes — Left Wheel — March!**

Left Squadron Officer. **Threes — Right Wheel — March!**

Division officers. **Halt — Dress!**

Commander. **March!**

Division officers. **Halt — Wheel up — Left — Dress!**

**Explanation.** The (fourth or fifth) division named, stands fast. The others quarter wheel to the right, into echelon. The four right divisions wheel into threes to the left, the three left divisions, (if the formation is on the fifth,) wheel by threes to the right. At the **March!** by the commander, the divisions of the right wing, march to the left, and the left divisions to the right, and form into column; the right divisions in front of the fifth, the left in its rear.

**Note.** — In the same manner the column may be formed on any named division. The column may also be formed on the two centre divisions, viz. the 4th and 5th standing fast, the divisions of both flanks meeting and forming in the rear, or front, of the centre; viz. divisions 3 and 6 meeting 2 and 7, and 1 and 8, and wheeling up. (See p. 114.)
Example of forming on the 5th division.

24. Deployment from centre.

Commander. Column will deploy — from the Centre!

" Threes, Right and Left Wheel — March!

Div. Officers. Halt! Dress!

Commander. March!

5th Div. Offi. Forward! March!

" " " Halt! Dress!

Div. Officers. Halt! Wheel up! March!

Halt (Right or Left) Dress!

Explanation. At the caution to deploy, markers mark the alignment on the front division, beyond the flanks of the line. The fifth division to be considered the centre, and will not wheel, but will advance, and occupy the ground of the first. At the word March! by the commander, the four front divisions march to the right, the three rear divisions to the left.

Example.
25. Close column on the right, the left in front.

Commander. *Form close Column — of Divisions — on the Right — Left in Front!*

" *Divisions — Left Quarter — Wheel — March!*

Div. Officers. *Halt — Dress!*

Commander. *Threes — Right wheel — March!*

Div. Officer. *Halt — Dress!*

Commander. *March!*

Div. Officer. *Halt! Wheel up! Right Dress!*

*Explanation.* In this formation the right division keeps its ground, the other divisions wheel to the left, the quarter circle, into echelon, halt, dress, wheel to the right, by threes; at the word *March!* from the commander, the divisions march to their places in front of the right, halt, wheel up and dress.

![Diagram](image.png)

*Note.* — On similar principles, the column is formed on the left, with the right in front. To form line from the above column on the 8th number, the 1st, 2d, 3d, 4th, 5th, 6th, and 7th, will deploy to the right. To form line on the 1st, the 1st will advance, the remainder will deploy to the left.

26. Deployment of a column to the right, having the right in front.

When a column, formed right in front, is obstructed on the left flank, as represented in the annexed example, and the rear cannot be deployed to the left, it may deploy to the right on the rear division, as follows;
SQUADRON EVOLUTIONS.

Commander. Column will deploy to the right — Form line on the rear, — March!

“ Threes, — Right wheel, — March!

Div. Officers. Halt! Dress!

Commander. March!

8th Div. Offi. March! Halt! Left — Dress!

Div. Officer. Halt, Wheel up! March! Halt! Left, Dress!

1st Div. Offi. Halt! Wheel up! Left — Dress!

Explanation. — At the caution, two markers will mark out the alignment; all, except the 8th division, wheel by threes to the right. When the 8th is unmarked by the 7th, it is ordered by its officer to advance, and dress by the markers; the other divisions successively uncover each other, wheel up, and forward. The 1st, being on the alignment, will march out, halt, and wheel up. Markers will then return to their posts.

27. Open column on the right, right in front.

Commander. Form open Column of Divisions — on the Right — Right in Front!

“ Divisions, Right, Half Wheel — March!

Div. Officers. Halt! Dress!

Commander. Threes, Right Wheel — March!

Div. Officers. Halt! Dress!

Commander. March!

Div. Offi. Forward — March!

Div. Offi. Halt, Wheel up! Left, Dress!

Explanation. — The 1st division stands fast, the remainder right half wheel. Markers mark out the alignment; divisions
march out diagonal to the rear, march at their proper distance, in column, halt, wheel up, cover well, and dress.

28. Deploying to the left, from open column.

Commander. Column will deploy to the left, for Line on the Right—March!

" Left, Half wheel—March!

" March!

Div. Officer. Forward! Halt! Dress!

" Halt—Dress!

Explanation. — Markers will trot out, and mark the alignment on the front division, which stands fast; the remainder half wheel to the left. At the word March! they oblique to their places, halt, and dress.

Note. — When the right flank of divisions arrive on the left flank of those formed, they must be halted and dressed, before marching into line, by ordering, Left Flank, Forward!

In such deployments the commander will order, The Column will deploy, in Echelon—to the Left! It may also deploy by the flank march of divisions, by threes.
Example.

29. Double column of divisions, formed on the centre, at division distance, by the 4th and 5th advancing.

Commander. **Form double column of divisions, on the centre March!**

Right Squadron Officer. **Left incline,—March!**
Left “ “ **Right incline,—March!**
Division Officer. **Forward, centre — Dress!**

Explanation. At the command March! by the commander, the 4th and 5th divisions increase their pace, moving directly forward; at the command, Incline! the 1st, 2d and 3d, left oblique; the 6th, 7th, and 8th, right oblique; the 3d and 6th meet; their officers order, Forward! the 2d and 7th will meet and forward; also, the 1st and 8th will meet.
Example.

Note. — This column will also be formed by the 4th and 5th standing fast; the 1st, 2d, and 3d, left half wheel; the 6th, 7th, and 8th, right half wheel; wheel into threes, and march into double column.

30. Deploying from centre, form line on the centre.
Commander. Column will deploy from the centre, — March!
Right Squadron Officer. Right half wheel — March!
Left “ “ Left half wheel — March!
Division Officers. Forward! centre, — Dress!

Explanation. — The 1st, 2d, and 3d division will right half wheel; the 6th, 7th, and 8th will left half wheel, march to the left or right of the division to be formed upon; wheel square to the front, dress, and march into line.

Note. — The rear may also deploy right and left, by wheels of three, which is too obvious to need explanation. (See previous Deploys, right and left.)
31. Form line to the rear, or rear division.

Commander. *Form Line on Rear Division — To the rear, March!*

Division Officer. *Three quarters — Left wheel — March!*

Commander. *Column, Forward — March!*

Division Officers. *Forward! Halt! Dress!*

*Explanation.* On the word *March!* the rear division will left about wheel, advance one horse's length, halt, and dress. The remainder wheel three quarters to the left. At the word *Forward — March!* the whole march in echelon towards their respective places. When arrived in line, *Halt! Left! Dress!* will be ordered by each division officer.
Example.

32. Countermarch and change of front in open column of divisions.

Commander. *The Column will countermarch— and change front on the right flank of Divisions— March!*

Division Officers. *Threes, Right wheel — Halt! Dress! Right about, — March! Halt! Wheel up — Halt! Dress!*

Explanation. At the word *March!* by the commanding officer, the divisions are wheeled by threes, by their officers, countermarched and wheeled into column of divisions, facing to the rear, — rear in front.

Example.
33. Rear of the column brought to the front.

Commander. *Rear of the Column will occupy the Front—March!*

Division Officer. *Threes, Right wheel — March!*

" " *Halt — Dress!*

Commander. *March!*

Division Officer. *Halt! Wheel up! Halt — Dress!*

*Explanation.* The divisions wheel by threes to the right; the rear marches out its full length, halts, wheels up, and advances. The next division performs the same operation. When the division moving, is opposite to its flank, and the whole are in column, the commander will give the command, *Halt!*

*Note.* — The rear of a column may be brought to the front, by filing from both flanks, moving to the front, and forming as follows;

Commander. *Rear Division, by files, from the flanks, to the front — March!*

Division Officer. *From the flanks file to the front — March!*

The divisions file forward from the flank, and pass the column its full length; at the word, *Form up!* files inward, halts, and dresses. The other divisions execute the same movement, in succession.

Changing the rear of a column to the front when troops are on the march, contributes greatly to their ease. Owing to the inequality of pace in the leading divisions, the march of the rear divisions is often rendered exceedingly irregular and fatiguing; by frequent changes the burden is more equalized.

*Example.*
34. Direct march of a column.
Commander.  *Column — Forward March!*
Division Officer.  *Forward — March!*
Commander.  *Column, Halt!*
Division Officer.  *Halt — Dress!*

*Explanation.* Every man must advance at the order, March; it is too frequently the case that they wait for each other. Division officers should at the same time repeat the order, Forward, march. At the order, Column, halt, every man should halt. Division officers repeat the order, Halt. Irregularity in moving or halting, interferes with distances.

35. Flank march of the column.
Commander.  *Column will take ground to the Right by flank march of Divisions — March!*
Division Officer.  *Threes, Right Wheel — March!*
“  “  *Halt — Dress!*
Commander.  *Forward — March!*
“  “  *Halt — Form Divisions — March!*
Division Officer.  *Halt — Wheel up — Halt — Dress!*

*Explanation.* At the word March, by the commander, each division officer orders Threes, right wheel; at the order Forward march, the whole march to the right (viz. now to their present front;) at the word Halt, form division, each division is halted and wheeled, left into column.

36. From this flank march from the right of divisions; the column of divisions can also be formed with the rear in front, viz. forming column, rear in front.
Commander.  *Form Divisions, Rear in Front — March!*
Division Officers.  *Threes, Right Wheel — March!*
“  “  *Halt — Dress!*

*Explanation.* The front threes are wheeled to the right; the remainder of each division form on their left, which will face to the former rear.
37. Change of position in column, by a flank march of its divisions.

Commander. Column will change position to the Alignment, on the Right — March!

Division Officers. Threes, Right Wheel — March!

" " " Halt — Dress!

Commander. March!

Division Officers. Right Oblique — Forward!

" " " Forward — Halt — Right Dress!

Explanation. At the caution, the markers mark the new alignment, (according to directions of the commander.) The divisions wheel by threes to the right, and march to the new position, directing their march so as to enter perpendicular in the column, when they halt and front.

Example.

---

Echelon Movements.

For echelon movements, see the evolutions for a troop, p. 79. They are suitable for a squadron or regiment; and any commander who understands his duty, can give the commands suitable for divisions, half squadrons or a regiment. It is inexpedient to enter into the particulars, as the intention of this work is to be as laconic as possible.

38. Change of position on the right flank, the left brought forward the eighth of a circle.
Commander.  The Left will be brought forward the eighth of a circle, by a Quarter Wheel of Divisions — March!
Division Officer.  Right Quarter Wheel — March!
   "   "  Halt — Dress!
Commander.  Forward — March!
Division Officer.  Forward — March!
   "   "  Left Shoulders — Forward!
   "   "  Halt — Dress!
   "   "  Forward — Halt — Dress!

Explanation. At the word March, by the commander, each division is quarter wheeled to the right. Each division officer will lead forward. When arrived at the left flank to be formed upon, the left flank of each division will forward their left flank, halt and dress, then forward into line. Halt and dress.

At the caution, markers will mark out the alignment. The right division will be wheeled a quarter to the right, halt and dress, to be formed upon.

Example.

39. Change position on left flank, the right brought forward the eighth of a circle.
   This is performed in the same manner as the formation to the right, substituting left for right.
40. Change position on the left flank, the right thrown back the eighth of a circle.

Commander. *The Right will be thrown back eighth of a circle by Divisions — March!*

Left division officer wheels his division on its left flank, the half wheel backwards, halts and dress.

**Division Officers.**  *Threes About — March!*

```
" " Halt — Dress!
" " Right Quarter Wheel — March!
" " Halt — Dress!
```

**Commander.**  *Forward — March!*

**Division Officers.**  *March!*

```
" " Halt — Dress!
" " Left Shoulders — Forward!
" " Halt — Dress!
" " Forward — March — Halt!
" " Threes, About — Halt — Dress!
```

**Explanation.** At the word *March*, the left division will be reined back and form the alignment. The remainder will be wheeled about by threes, marched near to the alignment, halt, dress; march into line, wheel about by threes: Halt, dress.

**Note.** — This and many other evolutions are practised by companies — also by half squadrons.

**Example.**
41. Change position in open column, the left thrown back eighth of a circle.

Commander. *The Left will be thrown back eighth of a circle in Column of Divisions — March!*

Division Officer. *Right Wheel — March!*

" " *Halt — Dress!*

Commander. *Head of the Column, Right Shoulders — Forward — March!*

Commander. *Halt.*


Commander. *Rear Divisions, march on the new Alignment — March!*

Division Officers. *Threes — Right Wheel — March!*

" " *Halt — Dress — Forward — March!*

" " *Left — Oblique!*

" " *Forward — March!*

" " *Halt — Wheel up — Dress!*

Commander. *Column into Line — Wheel — March!*

Division Officers. *Left Wheel — March!*

" " *Halt — Dress — Front!*

**Explanation.** The line is wheeled into column of divisions; the front division is wheeled in the direction of the new alignment; division officers wheel their respective divisions by threes to the right, oblique to the left in the direction to be formed; wheel up into divisions, dress. The commander wheels the column into line. Each division officer will preserve their respective distance from each other, or when wheeled into divisions they will not have division distances.
Example.

42. Change position on the right flank, the left brought forward quarter of a circle, by open column of divisions in echelon.

Commander. The Line will change position on the Right — Left brought forward quarter of a circle — by Divisions in Echelon — March!

First Division Officers. Right Wheel — Halt — Dress!
Division Officer. Right Half Wheel — March!
Commander. Forward — March!
Division Officer. Forward March!

“ “ Left Shoulders Forward — Halt! Dress!

Explanation. At the word March, by the commander, the right is wheeled, halt and dress, by the first division officer. The remainder right half wheel, march in echelons until near the left flank to be formed upon, when the left of the division will be brought square by left shoulders, forward, march into line, halt and dress.

Markers will mark the alignment at the caution.

43. Change position on the left flank, the right brought forward quarter of a circle by open column of divisions in echelon.
Explanations. This is performed in the same manner as forming to the right, substituting left for right. This movement is very desirable where there are extended flanks; to wheel a line of extensive flanks it cannot be done easily without crowding the pivot or centre. This is also desirable where the ground is not level.

44. Change of position to the rear, by the flank march of divisions by threes.

Commander. The Line will retire in open Column by the Flank March of Division — March!

Division Officer. Right Wheel — March! — Halt! — Dress!

" " Threes, Right Wheel — March!

Commander. Forward — March!

" Halt — Dress!

Commander. The Column will form into Line — March!

Division Officer. Wheel up — Halt — Dress!

Commander. Left into Line, Wheel — March!

Division Officer. Halt — Dress!

Explanations. The line is wheeled into column of divisions; divisions are wheeled by threes to the right, marched square to their former rear, halt, wheeled into column of divisions; by order of the commander the column is wheeled into line.

At the caution, markers will mark the new alignment. (See p. 90, forming column to the rear, and p. 90, forming line from column by rank of threes. This is also suitable for a squadron.)

Changes of Front.

45. Change of front, by countermarching, in open column of divisions, from the right flank.

Commander. The Line will change front — in open Column of Divisions — From the Right — March!

Division Officer. Division, Right Wheel — March!

" " Halt — Dress!

Commander. Countermarch — March!
Div. Officers successively. Right about — Wheel — March!
Division Officer. Halt — Dress!
Commander. Left into Line — Wheel — March!
Division Officer. Halt — Dress!

Explanation. The line wheels into column of divisions. The head or front of the column is countermarched to the right about, the remainder of the column marches up to the ground the countermarch was made upon, and will successively wheel right about, preserving their wheeling distances. The column will be wheeled into line.

Note. See Example, p. 19, and changing front for troop drill, p. 78, which can also be practised in squadron.

The above movement can be done by threes or subdivisions, from one or both flanks.

See Example, p. 79, countermarching on the centre from both flanks. These retreats should be frequently practised, that every man may be familiar with them separately.

46. Change of front on the centre, by the operation of open columns on the centre.

Commander. The Line will change Front on the Centre —
By Divisions — March!
Left half squadron officer. Left half Squadron Threes — about — March!

“ “ “ Halt — Dress!
Division Officer. Divisions — Left Wheel — March!
“ “ Halt — Dress!
Commander. Column, Countermarch — March!
Div. Officer, successively. Left Wheel — March!
“ “ “ Halt — Dress!
Left half squadron off. Left half Squadron — Threes — about — Halt — Centre Dress!
Example.

Explanation. The left wing is put about by threes, the whole wheeled into column to the left, the two centre divisions continuing the wheel by the repetition of the command (from division officers successively) *Left Wheel*, till they arrive on the line *R. L*. This places the right divisions in column facing the left, and the left divisions in column facing to the right. At the command *Countermarch*, the right divisions march to the left, and as they successively come to their places, wheel into line; the left divisions at the same time march to the right, and wheel into line on the (now) right flank of the fifth division. The left wing is now to be wheeled about by threes, and the squadron will be formed facing its former rear.

**Note.** This movement is performed with great facility and expedition; as it requires no extension of the flanks, it may be executed by several regiments in line without the least interference. (For Changes of Front, see p. 79.)

*Passage of Defiles.*

A single troop will, in most cases, pass a narrow defile by filing from a flank, or some part of the front before which the defile presents. But it is desirable, if possible, to overcome or pass defiles with no less than ranks of threes, which will keep a troop in compact order. Passage of defiles are either to the front or rear. If the defile will admit a more extensive front than a file of threes, subdivisions or divisions should be preferred. The operation is critical, and should be executed in the presence of an enemy with as much celerity as regularity will admit. Officers will be quick in giving commands, and careful in preserving order in the movements, and lose no time in the
execution. If the enemy in a retreat press close upon the line, parties should be posted on each side of the debouche, and a detachment of expert skirmishers sent out to impede the enemy. If a bridge is not firm, pressure must be avoided as much as possible, to prevent it from breaking in.

47. Passage of a defile in front, by divisions from the centre.

Commander. The Line will pass the Defile in Front—By Divisions—From the Centre—March!

Centre Division Officer. Forward—March!

Left Wing Officer. Threes, Right Wheel—March!

Right " " Threes, Left Wheel—March!

Division Officer. Halt—Dress!

" " Wheel up—Forward—March!

Commander. Halt.—Column will Deploy on the Centre—March!

Division Officer. Right and Left Oblique—March!

" " Forward—Halt—Dress!

Explanation. The defile is supposed to be ponds or marsh, ground in front of the centre of the squadron sufficient space for the two centre divisions. If the line is advancing, the commander makes a momentary halt before the caution. The two centre divisions will advance, the wings wheel inwards by threes, march to the centre, and in rear of the front, (viz. the natural centre.) Having passed the defile, the commander halts the column, directs the markers to mark the alignment, and orders the column to deploy from the centre, the flanks oblique right and left, and march into line.
Example. A defile in front of the centre.

48. Passage of a defile in front, by threes from the centre.

Commander. *From the centre, by Threes — Pass Defile — March!*

Officer in the centre, viz. left half squadron officer. *Threes in Centre — Forward — March!*

Division Officers. *Threes (right or left) Wheel — March!*

Commander. *The Line will Form — March!*

Division Officers. *Right and Left Oblique!*

" " *Halt — Dress!*

Explanation. The left threes of the right, and the right threes of the left wings will advance, the remainder will wheel to the centre, wheel in the rear of the leading threes. When ordered to form line, open out and oblique right and left.

49. Passage of a Defile in front by files from the Centre.

Commander. *The Line will pass defile — by files from the Centre — March!*

Officers in line will turn their horses as much towards the centre as they can.

Officer in Centre. *Files from Centre — Forward — March!*

Commander. *Halt — Form Line on Centre — March!*

Division and Subd. Officers will order, *Right (or left) Oblique — March!*

Division Officers. *Halt — Dress!*
Explanations. Suppose the defile to be very narrow, or a bridge. The centre advances, the remainder, not being able to wheel for the want of room, can wheel only when their turn alternately arrives. The right flank marches to the centre; the left file will march towards the right; they will meet in the centre, and wheel in the rear of those in front.

50. Passage of a Defile in front, by threes from a Flank.
Commander. *From the Right, by Threes — Pass Defile — March!*

Squad. Officer. *Threes — Right Wheel — March!*

Halt — Dress!

Commander. *Forward — March!*

Form Line — March!

Explanations. The threes on the right stand fast, the remainder wheel by threes to the right. After the defile is passed and the order to form line, an oblique will be made by the rear (to the left,) march into line, halt and dress.

51. Passage of a Defile in the rear, by threes, from both Flanks retiring to the centre.

Commander. *The Line will pass the defile in the Rear — by Threes — from the Flanks — March!*

Subdivision Off. *Threes, Right (and left) Wheel — March!*

The right flank wheel by threes to the right, the left flank wheel by threes to the left.

Half Squadron Officer. *Threes, About Wheel! — March!*

Note. — The front threes of the right wing will right about; the front threes of the left wing will left about, lead up to the centre of the former line, wheel to the rear, forming a front of six.

Column, Halt — Form Line — March!

Half Squadron Officer. *Threes, About — March!*

Forward — Halt — Dress!

Explanations. After the column has passed through and halted, when ordered to form line, they will wheel about out-
wards; the right flank left about, the left flank right about; oblique right and left, and form line.

Example.

Advancing from Line.*

52. Advancing from a Flank by Divisions.
Commander. *Advance by Divisions from the Right — March!*
First Div. Off. *Forward — March!*
Div. Officer. *Threes, Right Wheel — March!*

" " *Halt — Wheel Up — March!*

Explanation. At the order *March*, by the commander, the first division will advance, the remainder of the line wheel by threes to the right. Each division officer will, successively, on arrival upon the ground of the first division, march from halt, wheel up, and forward in the rear of the division preceding.

* See Mounted Drill, p. 40.
53. Form line to the front, from column of divisions.

Commander. **Front, Form Line — March!**
First division officer will continue square to the front.
Division Officer. **Left Oblique — March!**

" " **Forward — Dress!**

*Explanation.* The front of the column will not halt unless ordered to halt. The remainder of the column will left oblique until in front of the left flank of the division to be formed upon, when the division will forward and dress by the right.

54. Advancing from line by subdivisions, from the right flank.

Commander. **From the Right Flank by Subdivisions to the Front — March!**
First Sub. Officer. **Forward — March!**
Sub. Officers. **Right Wheel — March!**

" " **Left Wheel — March!**

*Explanation.* The first subdivision will advance. The remainder of the line wheel by subdivisions to the right, march up to the ground, left wheel in the rear of the front.

*Note.* — To form line to the front from column of subdivisions, it is performed in the same manner as from divisions.

*Passage of Obstacles.*

If the obstruction be small, the impeded files break back without an order, and follow by files (or threes) the uninterrupted part of the line. When the obstructing body is large, and impedes a large portion of the line, the part obstructed must be formed into column by a halt, and wheel (to the right, or left) into column. This must be by command. Suppose the front of the right half squadron is obstructed, the commander of that half of the squadron orders

55. **Right Half-squadron, Halt — Divisions (or Subdivisions,) Left Wheel — March!**

By Div. (or Sub.) Officers. **Left Wheel — March!**

" " " " " **Halt — Dress!**
Note. — Halt! Dress! is the order after marched into line.

Explanation. This movement must be executed expeditiously, and with great order. (Skirmishers should be sent out in advance of the left half squadron,) for on the opposite side there may be adversaries. The command March, by the commander, puts the whole on the march to left. To halt and wheel into column, there should be great promptness.

Example.

56. To pass an obstruction in front of the left Flank.
Commander of the left Half-squadron. Halt! — Divisions, (or Subdivisions,) Right Wheel — March!
Division (or Subdivision Officer.) Right Wheel — March!
" " Halt — Dress!

Explanation. This is executed in the same manner as when the right flank has to overcome the obstruction, by marching to the left, substituting left for right.

Evolutions for Attack and Defence.
The manœuvres of the troop and squadron are now brought more to the observation of the soldier, when they are developed both for his success and safety. Here, their application, together with other movements which are requisite for attack and defence, are to be observed and practised. Here it should be observed, that though the troops may get somewhat deranged, or be compelled to vary in some instances from the methods laid down for the field movements, they are not to consider themselves disqualified for acting, and fall into confusion, and quit the field, as young troops may do, who have been habit-
uated only to the straight lines and parade movements for display and amusement.

The Charge, it is to be observed, is the most important and difficult of all cavalry movements, and should be executed with precision and celerity.

In charging infantry, if the ground is open and level, the line should begin to gallop at three hundred yards from the enemy, in order to receive as few fires as possible. At the instant of the shock, the body must be well back, the horse unrestrained by the bit, and the spurs applied when he slackens his pace. If on the shock a momentary derangement takes place, and the charge is successful, the line will instantly dress up by the standard and pursue in line, or detach from the flanks, and pursue at pell-mell, as the commander may deem the most expedient.

In charging cavalry, when a formidable fire is not to be expected, the line need not begin to gallop till within eighty or one hundred yards of the enemy, that the horses may arrive in wind and full vigor when they shock with the opposing body. When the line is near, the horses must accelerate their movement, and dash upon the enemy with all possible speed.

All charges are to be made with sword in hand, colors flying, and the trumpets sounding the charge. No officer should presume to fire, while in close order of two ranks, unless there is the most pressing necessity for it, which seldom happens, but should fall upon the enemy with sword in hand. There is little hope of success from cavalry who commence their attack with the firing of carbines or pistols. It is by the right use of the sword that they are to expect victory. By this mode of attack, a body of cavalry will generally rout one that depends on the pistol for defence. It is not to be inferred from hence, that this is a useless weapon; so far from this, it should be considered a very important one when rightly applied, which is principally to skirmish in detached parties, to annoy the enemy in their approach to the main body, to cover retreats, &c.
The officers must always endeavor to commence the attack, and not wait to be attacked, unless circumstances imperiously demand it. They are to encourage the men to keep a good countenance, and persuade them that the enemy are inferior in prowess; they should charge them, in the strictest terms, not to spare the enemy while they resist, but to destroy as many as they possibly can, and when resistance ceases and their arms are surrendered, the greatest mercy must be practised to the vanquished.

During the action, the men are to be silent, and extremely attentive to the commands of their officers; but if the commander deems it proper, the whole line may give a loud huzza, which must be done only by his orders, and a preconcerted signal. This is sometimes practised from an idea that it keeps up the spirits of the men, by preventing them from reflecting on their danger, and damp the ardor of the enemy.

All officers in the cavalry may be assured that there are only two certain methods of defeating an enemy in the open field. The first is, by attacking him with the utmost impetuosity; the other, by outflanking him. It must therefore be a standing maxim, and upon all occasions the principal object, to gain the advantage, if possible, of attacking in flank, and to shock him with the utmost force and impetuosity.

It cannot be too often inculcated, that the effect of the charge depends very considerably on the attention and steadiness of the leaders. The best troops will fall into confusion if badly led. The standards (when in line) must always be carried upright, in order to facilitate the moving and dressing of the line; and the bearers must keep well up to the leaders. The men will be attentive to the movement of the standards, keep up in line, their horses under the command of the bit and spur, perfectly square to the front, and themselves well balanced in their saddles.

When the charge is successful, and the enemy broken, the flank divisions, or any portion of the line local circumstances may require, should be ordered to disperse, and pursue.
SQUADRON EVOLUTIONS.

It will be advisable, in case of pursuit, to keep a central (squadron if it is a regiment,) division or a troop formed. This will not only tend to prevent the broken enemy from rallying, but will serve as a point for the pursuers to rally upon and form to, in case it should be requisite to recall them, or to take charge of any prisoners who may be brought in.

57. Attack of Infantry, part of the line formed into column.

Commander. Left half Squadron, form open Column of Divisions — on its Right Flank — March!

Left Half-squad. Officer. Left Divisions, Form open Column on the Fifth Division!

Left Division Off. Threes, Left Wheel — March — Halt — Dress!

" " " Wheel Up — March — Forward!

Explanation. A line of infantry is supposed to be drawn up, with its right wing covered by a morass or other obstruction, and it is found necessary to attack. The line advances directly forward. The left divisions are formed in the rear of the fifth division, by wheeling in threes to the right, march up in the rear of the fifth, wheel into divisions, and forward. The whole are then ordered to charge. The right wing square to the front, the divisions in column, wheel to the left and charge down the enemy’s flank, and if successful, may disperse and pursue. If the charge proves unsuccessful, the squadron, (or regiment) may retire out of the enemy’s fire by the trumpet signal; retreat, and form, fronting the enemy, by trumpet signal. (See Pellmell.)
Example.

58. Attack, in double column, from the centre, upon a line of infantry, whose wings are covered.

For Example, see p. 128.

Explanation. Suppose the line R L are infantry, both flanks being secured from a direct charge, the defile sufficiently wide to admit two divisions in front, if the front division break through the enemy's line, the rear will wheel their respective divisions right and left, and charge vigorously down the flanks; and if successful, disperse and pursue any who may attempt to escape. If the charge is unsuccessful, the whole will return by the trumpet signal, Retreat, out of the fire of the enemy, and form line.

The command must be given distinct, with spirit, and as nearly simultaneous as possible, that every part of the column may advance at the same time.

Commander. The Column will charge to the Front — March!
Div. Officer. Trot — Canter — Charge!

For orders forming column, see p. 125.

59. The squadron advancing in line passes broken ground, and charges in line.

Note. The squadron is supposed to be moving up to the enemy in line, and meets with broken ground, over which it is difficult to pass in line, (the Commander orders)
Commander. **The Line will File from the Right of Half Squadrons**, (or Divisions, as occasion requires) — *March!*

Half-squadron, or, Division Officers will order, *Forward — March!*

Sub. Officers. *Files — Right Turn, Trot — March!*
Commander. *Form Line — March — Charge!*

**Explanation.** The right half squadron (or division) files to the front; the files will right turn and march in rear of their file leaders. When the line is ordered to be formed, it must be done with rapidity. The enemy to be charged at full speed.

**Note.** Skirmishers are indispensable to precede the line, and clear the ground from any small detachments in front, and mark the movement.

60. Attack by Right Half-squadron. The left supports in column.

Commander. **Left Half-squadron, form Columns of Subdivisions on its Flanks — March!**

Left Half-squadron Officer. *Form Columns of Subdivisions on both Flanks — March!*

Right Division Officer (of left Half-squadron.) *Threes — Right Wheel — March!*

Left Division Officer, (of left Half-squadron.) *Threes — Left Wheel — March!*

Left Half-squadron Officer. *Subdivisions — March — Halt — Wheel Up!*

Right Half-squadron Officer. *Forward — March!*

Subdivision Officer (of left flank.) *Halt — Dress!*

**Note.** Both flanks of the right Half-squadron will be covered by the columns of the left Half-squadron.

Left Half-squadron Officer. *Columns — Cover the Flanks of the Right Wing — March!*

Left Half-Subd. Officers. *Right Oblique — March!*

“ “ “ “ Forward — Dress!*

Commander. *Forward — Trot — Canter — Charge!*

**Explanation.** The left Half-squadron will form subdivisions
on its right and left flank, oblique to the right, and cover both flanks of the right wing. The commander will then order the charge to be executed. The columns following on at a brisk trot, and opening to wheeling distances. The charge completed, the right squadron halts, and the columns, which will be some distance in the rear, will diminish their pace to a walk.

If there is a regiment, this is performed by right and left squadrons.


**Note.** When the right half-squadron advances, the left half in column will oblique to the right and cover. When the right stand fast, and the formation on its flanks is executed before the advance is made, the left wing wheel by threes, march to the right, halt, and wheel up.

**Skirmishing.**

Skirmishers are requisite to cover the flanks and front of a corps, to mask manœuvres in the presence of an enemy, to pursue them, when broken and retreating in confusion; and to attack, in a loose and desultory manner, any small parties which may advance from a larger body, to bring on an engagement.

Skirmishers are taken from one or both flanks of the troop,
squadron, or regiment; or they may consist of a reserve detachment for the purpose, and are drawn up in the rear of one or both flanks of a line.

Skirmishers will advance with sword in hand. The front rank advances on the enemy by order of its commander.

*Skirmishers — Advance!*

When near the enemy, each man, without waiting for a word, places his sword in his bridle-hand, or slings it to his wrist, draws his left pistol, fires, returns it, and recovers his sword. If the enemy is retreating, the front rank will halt; the rear rank then advances, passes the front rank, each man to the left of his file leader, gallops up to the enemy, and attacks in the same manner; and thus they continue skirmishing, relieving each other, as long as circumstances may require, or until called in by the trumpet signal.

The rank which fired, if they are too near to halt, must left about, (each man on his own ground,) and retire until the relief skirmishers are met; then the retreating party will left about, halt and load.

If the enemy is scattered and able to make but a feeble opposition, the whole of the skirmishers may advance, form up in one rank, by bringing up those in the rear, the proper file leaders taking the right hand, and advance on the enemy; or the whole may be ordered to disperse and pursue, in full speed.

Skirmishing to the rear and retreating, is intended to keep back, or obstruct the free action of a superior force.

When skirmishers advance on the enemy, the commander of the squadron may detach a division or subdivision from each flank, which will advance in compact order, sword in hand. If possible, they will outflank the skirmishers a little, and take such positions as will be most favorable for supporting them. Should the skirmishers expend their fire, the supporters may advance and take their places, and attack in the same manner; the skirmishers may retire, and in their turn, form up into two supporting divisions in the rear of their flanks. Supporters are
necessary to guard the skirmishers from any attack of small parties of the enemy, which might get round their flanks, and attack in their rear.

In skirmishing, the men belonging to the same files, should, in some measure, be attached, and as much as possible, mutually support each other. For this purpose, the whole of the pistols of the same file should never be discharged at once, excepting on the most pressing occasions. Little attention is required to the dressing of ranks, during the movements; the men should advance readily, turn quick, and handle their arms with great dexterity. The men of the same files should endeavor to keep each other in view, and be ready at all times, to form up in their proper places, when the order or signal is given for that purpose.

61. To skirmish from both flanks.

Commander. The Flank Divisions—will Advance and Skirmish—March!

Flank Division Officer. Forward—March!

To the Centre—Extend!

Explanation. The flank divisions will advance when ordered, To the Centre, extend! The files will flank off towards the centre, (namely: from the left of the right division, and from the right of the left division,) until they join, when the whole Halt! Dress! by command. They will then be ordered to advance and skirmish, which will be as described. If the squadron retires, the skirmishers also retire by ranks, covering the rear; if the squadron halts or advances, they halt or advance on the enemy as before.

Skirmishers are requisite in most movements of attack, to cover them from the enemy's advanced parties.

A column of division can open out from the flanks of the divisions at open files, p. 10. The front skirmish and retire through the column on the left of the odd files, namely; on the left of their file leaders, to the rear of the column, left about,
cover and load. The next division, now the front, will advance in the same manner, and retire to the rear.

62. Dispersing, attack in pellmell, and rallying.
To the front in pursuit.

The commander will post himself in the rear, with the trumpeter at his left side. Each man must note his right and left hand man, his file, and the number of his subdivision, that he may not be at a loss when the signal for formation is given.

In dispersing, and pursuing, there should be a detachment from one of the flanks, kept compactly as a reserve.

Commander. The left Division remain in compact order. Balance of the Line will disperse — and pursue — March!

The officers throughout the line will order, Forward!

The trumpets will sound the Charge, the line will gallop off to the front, without regard to ranks or files; and with sword in hand attack the enemy, who is supposed to be retreating in confusion; the pistol to be used, if circumstances require it; but the chief reliance must be placed on the sword, which may now be wielded with great effect by the expert swordsman. Each man will move as directly to the front as possible, avoid crossing the route of his right or left file, and commence the attack, the moment he comes up with, or meets the enemy, as his own discretion shall dictate. Great care should be taken, in using the pistol, to avoid firing on each other. No man must advance singly into the midst of the enemy, without he is sure of being supported by his comrades. Besides their own efforts against the enemy, the officers will, during the conflict, watch over the men, keep them up to the enemy, and see that all vigorously perform their duty. The commander, accompanied by the trumpeter, follows the troop, (or squadron) and when it becomes requisite to rally, he posts the latter, fronting the direction the line is to be formed, and directs the Rally to be sounded, on which the whole gallop back, and form in their places on each side of the trumpeter.
63. Disperse, to the rear, in retreat.

Commander. *Disperse — To the rear — March!*

The trumpet sounds the retreat. The trumpeter advances to the commander, and the whole disperse, full speed, to the rear, followed by the commander and trumpeter. When the line is to be formed, the trumpeter is posted in the required direction, the rally sounded, the men form right and left of the trumpeter, with all possible despatch.

Dispersing and rallying should frequently be practised; it habituates the men to quick formations. Being dispersed by an enemy is the greatest misfortune that can happen. In such cases the action is not to be considered lost; by proper attention to the command of their officers, in conjunction with a reliance on their own exertions, they may immediately form and retrieve their misfortune.

*Note.* — *Pellmell!* Becomes necessary where the enemy is retreating in confusion, over the ground that is broken, and embarrassed with bushes, fences, or other obstructions, which may prevent cavalry from advancing in regular order, in the speed requisite to overtake the enemy. The retreat in pellmell is proper on similar grounds, and particularly from a superior infantry, from whom cavalry can retire without being exposed, and much sooner get out of reach of their musketry, than when retiring in regular order.

64. Attack in line, to the front.

Commander. *The Line will Attack — to the Front — March!*
Half Squadron Officer. *Squadron, Forward! — March!*
Division Officers. *Division, Forward — March!*
" " *Trot! — Canter! — Charge!*

Commander. *The Line will Halt!*
Div. Officers. *Slow! — Pace! — Halt!*

*Explanation.* The line is supposed to be at the halt. When the caution is given, the line advances on the trot; after pro-
ceeding about twenty yards, is put into a canter; this pace is continued till the charge is ordered, when it increases to full speed. The trumpets in the rear sounding the charge at the same time, and continue sounding during the attack. Swords are brought to the guard, the points a little forward, and elevated, and on coming up to the enemy, spurs are applied, and the horses dash, full vigor upon the enemy. At the command, *Slow — Pace!* the whole will diminish their speed to a trot, bringing their swords to the carry, then slope, and halt at the order. If a correct dressing be required, the commander will order the markers to mark the alignment, the standard advance up to it, and the line to dress up to the standard.

If the enemy is broken, and retreat in confusion, the line may continue the charge, without halting or dressing; or the flank divisions may advance, and pursue, pellmell.

65. Retiring in line.

Commander. *The Line will retire by Threes!* — *About!* — *March!*

 Officers in Line. *Threes, About!* — *March!*

 " " *Halt! Dress!*

Commander. *Forward!* — *March!*

Div. Officers. *Forward!* — *March!*

Commander. *The Line, Halt! About wheel!* — *March!*

Officers in Line. *Threes, about wheel — Halt! — Dress!*

Explanation. After the order, *About,* is given, the line is put about by threes. The line will retire until ordered to *Halt! — About wheel, by three!*

Suppose the charge is ordered, and it has been ascertained, after the line is formed, preparatory to the charge, that it would be expedient to retire, in the safest and most expeditious manner that is possible;

Or, after the charge is made, it would be advisable to face about, and again attack.
66. Attack to the front, in line of impression. (Suppose this is a charge of a regiment of two squadrons.)

Commander. *Form Line of Impression — March!*

Left Squadron Officer. *Squadron, close to the Front! — March!*

Commander. *Forward! — Trot! — Canter! — Charge!*

" *Slow! — Trot! — Halt!*

*Explanation.* The left squadron is supposed to be thrown at some distance in the rear, as a reserve. The commander concludes to attack in double rank, (of impression.) The rear squadron is ordered to form close order to the front. The rear squadron officer will advance his squadron within a horse's length of the rear of the front squadron, *Halt! Dress!*

The leaders of the squadrons take the place of the standards in the front rank, the latter falling back into the rear rank, and the covers of the standards, to the serrefiles. The serrefiles of the right, (now the front squadron) turn outward, from the centre, file off by the flanks, into the rear of the left, (now the rear squadron) and form a division on the rear of each flank. The line then, four deep, charges to the front, as shall be ordered. If the shock break the enemy's line, the front squadron may pursue, pellmell; the rear squadron trot after as a line of support. If the charge is unsuccessful, the retreat is made, by about wheel of threes.


Commander. *The right Squadron will form Column of Divisions, in rear of the Fourth! — March!*

Right Half-squadron Officer. *Threes, Right Divisions — Left Quarter — Wheel! — March!*

Officers of Wheeled Divisions. *Halt! Dress!*

" " " Threes, Left Wheel! Halt! — Dress!

Div. Officer. *Halt! Wheel up! Dress!"
Squadron Evolutions.

Commander. _Forward! — Trot!_

"_Halt! — Form for Flank Attack! — March!_

Right Half-squadron Officer. _Threes, Right Wheel—March!_

1st, 2d, 3d Division Officers. _Threes, Right Wheel—March!_

_Explanation._ The right divisions, viz. Nos. 1, 2, and 3, form column of divisions, in the rear of No. 4, on the principle laid down for the formation of columns. This position is represented at L. The command is given, _Forward — Trot!_ When within eighty or ninety yards of the enemy, the command for the formation of the flank attack is given. The three divisions in the rear of No. 4, wheel to the right by threes; at the word _March_, canter off, and deploy in the direction of R, against the left flank of the enemy, by bringing forward the right flanks, and diminishing the pace of the 3d, 2d, and 1st divisions, successively. The divisions of the right then move up and dress by the 3d; the commander then directs the charge to be sounded, and the whole advance in single pentece, and attack the front and flanks; the flank divisions circling round at the same time, and attack in the rear.

The attack is proper against infantry, in open, level ground, when their left flank is unsupported; and if quickly executed by well-disciplined cavalry, (and the commander is ignorant of the methods of securing his flanks, or is tardy in his movements, generally succeeds.)

Should the attack be unsuccessful, the retreat should immediately be sounded. The whole will retire, the flank divisions in echelon, making a circular retreat to their places, on the right of the line.

The movement to be performed from the left flank, is fully illustrated by the above explanation, and the following
Example.

68. Attack in double potence.

This is an attack on both the flank and front, at the same time. We will suppose the flanks are attacked by the rear rank, deploying from both flanks, or a reserve of half the squadron thrown in the rear for that special duty to be assigned them, which will confer on them for the time the denomination of rear rank.

Commander. **Rear Rank, from the Centre — Attack in Double Potence — March!**

Officer on the right of the Rear Rank. **Threes, Right Wheel, — March! — Wheel up, — March!**

Officer in the centre of Rear Rank, (viz. Left Division Officer.) **Threes, Left Wheel — March! — Wheel up — March!**

**Explanation.** The right half of the rear rank, wheel by threes to the right, march obliquely, wheel up without a previous halt; dress, and charge by signal, or sound of the trumpet.

The left half wheel, by threes to the left, march obliquely out and wheel up without a previous halt, (if ordered to halt and form, and wait for the order, Charge, it must be executed); should they march out, and wheel up, and the charge be made
all by signal, the centre also, (or front rank) is to charge in line, without the order from the commander. Officers in command, and leading, must be very cautious to be simultaneous in the performance of the duty assigned them. One officer should not allow another to wait for him; neither would it be prudent to be in too much of a hurry, as there would be a liability of confusion being introduced.

It will be recollected by officers who conduct a charge, that it is not to be made, if the trumpet is not heard to sound the charge.

If the enemy is repulsed, the assailants will disperse, and pursue. The front rank may frequently be reserved as a support, and advance as a support, only when required. If the enemy maintain their ground against the flank attacks, the front rank will be brought to the charge by their commander, with sword in hand, at full speed. The (troop or) squadron, forms by trumpet signal, when the commander directs.

Example.

69. Attack in echelon of half-squadron, to the front.

Commander. The Line will attack by Half-squadrons, in Echelon, from the Right — March!

Right Half-squadron Officer. Forward — March!

Left Half-squadron Officer. Slow! — Pace!
Explanation. At the command, The Right — Half-squadron — will Advance! the left half will diminish its pace, until clear of the left flank of the advancing wing. The right wing will charge with sword in hand. The left wing advances to the attack, when the leading half is twenty or thirty yards from the enemy.

If there are four troops in the squadron, the charge can be made in echelons, by companies, each charging to its front, in regular succession, when the preceding troops are the same distance alternately from the enemy.

The line is reformed by halting the right (namely, the front,) and dress the rear on the new alignment.

Note. Attacks in columns of direct echelons, are considered much more safe than in line. If the first attack is unsuccessful, the remaining part of the line may halt or retire. If the first charge breaks the enemy, the remaining portions of the column will advance with more confidence of success; and, should the necessity of the case require it, an oblique line is readily formed to attack in another direction.

70. Squadron retires in echelon from the left, and forms oblique line on the left half-squadron.

Commander. The Line — will Retire — in Echelon — From the Left — by Divisions — March!

Division officers. Threes — About Wheel — March! —

Halt — Dress!

Division officers. Forward — March!

Commander. Halt! — And Form an Oblique Line — on the Left Half-squadron — March!

Division Officers. Halt — Threes About — March!

" " Left — Half Wheel — March!

" " Halt — Dress!

" " Left incline — Halt — Dress!

Explanation. At the order, the whole line will be put about by threes. The left division will advance; the other divisions
will advance successfully, when the divisions preceding them obtain their respective distances.

At the caution to form oblique line on the rear, (the original natural front, namely, right,) the column will be halted, each division will be put about by threes, left half wheeled, and marched into line. When the caution is given to retire, the trumpets will sound the retreat.

Example.

![Diagram showing the formation of a line and echelon]

**Note.** A B line advancing; C D column in echelon; R L line formed obliquely on the rear.

71. Attack to the front and pursuit from the flanks.

The squadron charges in line, and is supposed to repulse the enemy. The commander orders

*Flank Divisions — will Disperse and Pursue — March!*

Flank Division Officer. *Forward — Disperse and Pursue — Trot — Charge!*

*Explanation.* The line, after the successful charge, will diminish, and if requisite, halt. The flank divisions will disperse and pursue. The centre will continue formed, and will halt to
receive prisoners; or, if requisite, to support the advanced flanks. A division may remain as a reserve, the remainder advance. When the rally is sounded, the skirmishers return on the gallop and form on their original places.

72. Attack by the two centre divisions, the remaining divisions supporting in echelon.

Commander. The Line—will Attack—By Centre Divisions The Flank Divisions—Supporting in Echelon—March!

Centre Division Officers. Forward—Trot—Charge!
Flank Division Officers, in succession. Divisions—Forward—Trot!

Officers of Central Divisions. Slow Pace—Halt—Dress!

Explanation. At the command, To Attack—by Centre Divisions! the two centre divisions, (namely: No. 4 of the right half-squadron, and No. 5 of left half-squadron,) advance at a trot, under the direction of the senior officer. The flank divisions move forward in succession, at the command of their respective officers, forming the two flank echelons R L and O K. The centre divisions then canter and charge the enemy. The divisions in echelon will increase their pace and keep their relative distances as near as possible, and be ready to form up on the flanks of the front, or halt and form obliquely for flank attacks.

This mode of attack is proper, where a body of small front is to be charged, and it is necessary to guard the flanks against any covering parties of the enemy, on the right and left. Should the enemy appear suddenly on the right, the divisions on the right in echelon will be halted, and an oblique line formed on the principles laid down; if on the left, a line may be instantly formed for an attack in that direction; or one echelon may be brought up into line with the centre divisions, by a halt of those divisions, and the other flank kept in echelon, as circumstances require.
The line is formed by advancing the divisions, (in echelon,) and dress on the centre divisions.

Or the formation may be on the two flanks, \( R \), by wheeling the advanced divisions about by threes, marching back after obtaining a dressing position, threes about, wheel again, and dress by the right.

Example.

\[
\begin{array}{ccccccc}
& & & & & & \\
& & & & & & \\
& & & & & & \\
& & & & & & \\
& & & & & & \\
\end{array}
\]

73. Squadron marching right in front by files, (or threes,) form two lines for a front attack.

Commander. *Form Open Column — Of Divisions — And Deploy to the Left — On the First and Fifth — March!*

Division Officers. *Form Divisions — March!*

" " " Halt — Dress!

Half-squadron Officer. *Left incline — And Form — March!*

Division Officers. *Left incline — Forward — Halt — Dress!*

Explanation. The squadron is supposed to be filing along a narrow road which has plain ground to the left, the right secured by a pond, and the approach of the enemy is discovered. The command is given *To Form Divisions!* The right (or front) of each division slackens pace, the rest will quarter turn to the left, and form up on the trot, dressing as they successively form.

At the command, *Left incline — March!* the column deploys to the left, on the front and fifth divisions, forming two lines. The front, (namely, the right half of the squadron,) may now charge to the front, and the other remain for a line of support,
to act as the commander shall order. If he finds it requisite to extend the line to the left, the rear may incline by echelon, or wheel into echelon, take ground to the left and form on the left of the first, (now the front) half-squadron.

Note.—If the ground is open on each flank, the column may form, as above described, and deploy into two lines, on a central division, to be named in each half-squadron, which will form two lines across the road. If the left flank is covered, the deployment must be to the right, on the 4th and rear divisions, which will form two lines, on the right of the road. All these deployments are already fully explained, which can be found by reference to Columns Deploying, (p. 105–115.)

If a regiment is filing by the right, and the enemy appear on the left, the divisions file up into column, and wheel into line to the left. If on the right flank, form up into column, as before, and form line on the reversed flank, by wheeling the front to the right, and form on the left of the front division. Or if the enemy approach suddenly,—form a column, and wheel the divisions into line to the right; and attack in reverse order. If time will not admit of this movement, halt, and turn files to the right, and attack with the rear rank in front. But this can seldom be requisite, for no prudent officer will permit the enemy to attack him, without some previous notice of their approach.

Should a regiment, filing (or be in threes) right in front, be threatened suddenly in the rear, the files may turn to the left about, form up to the right of the present front, in column, and form two lines, by deploying right or left, as the nature of the case may require.

These sudden movements furnish opportunities for a commanding officer to display his genius, in the choice of manœuvres and positions. If he possess a readiness, he will almost, without reflection, determine on such as the nature of the ground, and other circumstances require, and be able to make an ingenious attack, or retreat.
Example.

74. The squadron retires, in two lines.

Commander. *The Squadron will retire in two Lines, successively — March!*

Right Half-squadron Officer, (which is in front, the left Half-squadron being in the rear.) *Threes, outward Wheel — March!*

Left Half-squadron. *Halt! Dress!*

Right Half-squadron Officer. *Form to Front — March! — Threes, about Face!*

Left Half-squadron Officer. *Threes, outward Face — March!*

*Explanation.* The front rank will retreat from both flanks by threes, at a canter; after they have passed the rear about one hundred yards they will form to the front in line, which will face to the point retreating in inverse order. Commander of the half-squadron will put the line about by threes, facing the original front, in natural order. The rear rank will retreat in the same manner, round the flanks of the front rank. Thus they will alternately retreat, and support, or relieve, each other.
NOTE.—(See p. 138.) Rear rank, (or left half-squadron, supporting in column, in rear of the flanks of the front rank.) This retreat is also suitable for that position of the troops; after the retreat of the front rank is made, the rear forms from column into line, and retreats from both flanks. By retreats, here laid down, succeeding any particular charge or describing the retreat as suitable for any named position of the troops, it is not to be inferred that the retreat is to be confined to that particularly laid down for the troops in any named position. Retreats and attacks must be conducted according to the situation of your troops, or the ground; also, the nature of the situation of your enemy.

Example.

_Retreating by threes, from both flanks._

Forming to the rear, after the formation. The line will be put about by threes, facing in natural order to the original front.

NOTE.—This mode of charging and retreating is very suitable to charge with pistols, and retreat, after firing.

75. The squadron retires in ranks of fours, in the rear of the centre, by filing from the flanks of half-squadrons.

Commander. _The Line—will Retire—in Columns of_
**SQUADRON EVOLUTIONS.**

**Fours — From the Flanks of Half-squadrons, forming in the Centre of Half-squadrons — March!**

Half-squadron Officers. *By Files — From both Flanks — To the Centre of the Rear — Retire — March!*

**Explanation.** At the command, the right and left files (of the right and left half-squadrons) will about wheel, march to the centre of the rear of the half-squadron they are attached to, and wheel immediately to the rear; when the files from both flanks meet, which will form a front of four, the serre-files fall in on the rear of their respective divisions. When ordered *Halt!* the whole will halt at the order. **When ordered Form Squadron — March!**

The files of the right flank will left about, those of the left flank right about, and trot obliquely into line.

**Example.**

---

76. Passage of a line of infantry, by filing from the right of divisions.

Commander. *By Files — From the Right of Divisions — Pass Infantry — March!*

Division Officers. *File to the Front — March!*

Subdivision Officers. *Files — Right — Turn — Trot!*

**Explanation.** At the command, *To File to the Front!* the right of divisions will file square to the front, the members of each division following immediately in their rear, covering well their file leader. On arriving up to the infantry *OK*, their officers wheel out a few files, in front of each column, after
the front pass the infantry. As the files successively pass through they will form line to the front, by order of the commander. If there is no order for the formation of the line, they will naturally continue in files. The infantry will close up the open space as soon as the cavalry pass through. (See Passage of Defile, p. 157.)

Note. — This movement can also be made by threes, from both flanks of the line of half-squadrons, or if in regiment, from the flanks of squadrons. These movements are very desirable for cavalry, to pass over grounds which are broken or partially covered with bushes. It also exhibits a small front to the enemy. The line may not be formed until the cavalry approach near charging distance of the enemy; the line must then be formed rapidly, and dressing, particularly, have the attention of every man.

Example.

![Diagram of Charge in Line and Cavalry]

**Note.** — If a défile presents on the right, the front (namely, the right) column continues and passes through, the others halt; the heads then wheel to the right, and follow the right column in their proper order, through the défile. They then wheel to the left in the same manner, take their distances, march up and dress with the right column, and continue the march as before.
Example. **Passage of the defile in front of the right column.**

If it should become requisite that a change of position should be effected in this order, if to the right, the right column will circle round to the right, on a movable pivot, in the required direction. The others wheel in the same manner, till they come up into the required direction, when the whole move to the front. The movement to the left is performed upon the same principle.

Example.

77. **Passage of a line of Infantry, by threes from the centre and charge to the front.**
Commander. *By Column of Threes — From the Centre —
Pass the Infantry — March!*

Officers in the Centre, (namely, Right of Second Half-squadron,) **Forward — March!**

Division and Subdivision Officers. **Threes — Centre Wheel — March!**

*Explanation.* At the command to wheel to the centre, (the whole to the centre,) and wheel successively in the rear of the front, upon arrival on the ground originally occupied by the centre. This will give a front of six. The serrefiles follow in the rear. The infantry will wheel a sufficient number of men to admit the cavalry through.

The commander then orders **Front Form — Squadron — March!**

Officers in Column. **At a Trot — in Line — March!**

The line then charges sword in hand, and if requisite, may pursue from the flanks at pellmell or otherwise, as circumstances require.

78. Retreat of the line by the wheel of divisions.

Commander. **Retire in Line — By About Wheel — Of Divisions — March!**

Division Officers. **Right About Wheel — March!**

" " **Halt — Dress!**

Commander. **Forward — March!**

*Explanation.* This is a very simple movement. It is upon the same principle as wheeling a single troop about by threes. See figure on p. 79. In wheeling about by divisions, officers should be careful and not hurry themselves too much, and the right should wheel on their own ground as much as possible, that the wheeling flank may form immediately in the place occupied previously by the division on their right.

79. The squadron advancing to attack the enemy's right—is obstructed, takes ground to the right, and charges the left flank.
SQUADRON EVOLUTIONS.

If this is performed in presence of cavalry, the movement may be made to the right, in an oblique echelon of divisions, from which the line may be formed to the front by a quick movement, should they advance to attack. If in the presence of infantry, it should be executed by halting out of the reach of their fire, forming column on the right, marching by a flank, till opposite the left flank, deploying to the left and then charging; on coming up to the enemy the line may form single potence.

When in the presence of cavalry, changes of positions, particularly when near, should be executed with great care, and quickness. Cavalry are not able to exhibit their force in their defence against cavalry, when unprepared to receive their shock. An inferior force, to avail themselves of suitable opportunities, can cut to pieces, or put to flight, superior number and discipline. The principal operations of cavalry are in attacking the flanks, and outflanking; always to attack, not wait to be placed on the defensive, but assume the offensive, whenever it can be attained.

80. The squadron in line; the front rank attacks with pistols, the rear rank supports with swords.

Commander. The Line will Advance — And Fire! — March!

Front Rank Officer. Front Rank — Forward — Trot — Canter!

Front Rank Officer. Ready — Aim — Fire!

Rear Rank Officer. Forward — Trot — Charge!

Explanation. The front rank officer will caution his men previous to ordering Forward! to make ready. On the caution to make ready, the front rank place their swords in the bridle-hand, or hang them to the wrist by a sling. The rank then advance and fire, at the command, Aim — Fire! recovers the sword, and the whole charge to the front. The line is then halted and dressed by the commander.

Note. — This mode of attack may be necessary in pursuing
a line of cavalry on the retreat; but is seldom to be resorted to in an attack upon infantry, except when they are retreating in disorder.

81. Squadron retires in the chequered retreat of divisions.
Commander. The Line—will Retire—By Alternate Divisions!

**Left Division Officers.** Threes About—March!

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>&quot;&quot; &quot;&quot; &quot;&quot;</td>
<td>Forward—March!</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot;&quot; &quot;&quot; &quot;&quot;</td>
<td>Halt—Dress—Threes About!</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot;&quot; &quot;&quot; &quot;&quot;</td>
<td>Halt—Dress!</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Right Division Officers.** Threes About—March!

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>&quot;&quot; &quot;&quot; &quot;&quot;</td>
<td>Forward—March!</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot;&quot; &quot;&quot; &quot;&quot;</td>
<td>Halt—Dress!</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot;&quot; &quot;&quot; &quot;&quot;</td>
<td>Threes About—Halt—Dress!</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Explanation.** At the command, *Left Divisions, Threes About—March!* the second, fourth, sixth and eighth, about by threes, halt and dress. The command then is given, Forward! The divisions retire to the rear, about one hundred yards, where the senior officer commands, Halt!—*About Wheel—March!*—Halt—Dress! The left divisions now face to their former front. The right divisions, namely, the first, third, fifth and seventh, are put about in the same manner. They move through the intervals of the left divisions, about one hundred yards to their rear, where they are halted, and faced about by threes, and dressed. The retreat will thus alternately be continued with the right and left divisions. The retreat being completed, the line is ordered to be formed, which will be on the divisions the most retired.

Great attention should be paid to the intervals. If too near, the divisions on the right or left flank must incline, till proper distances are secured throughout the line to each division.

A strong party of skirmishers is very desirable in this movement, as well as in most others in retiring from the enemy, to check their pursuit against the retiring squadron.
Example of a chequered retreat.

82. The front of the column of divisions is changed, by countermarching from the right of divisions on their own ground; column inclines to the left, enters a new alignment; halts and wheels into line.

Commander. *Divisions of the Column, Countermarch and Change Front — March!*

Division Officer. *To the Right File — March!*

" " *Right About — Left Form — Halt — Dress!*

Commander. *Column Left Incline — March!*

Division Officer. *Left — Incline!*

Commander and Division Officer. *Forward — March!*

Commander. *Head of the Column — Right Wheel — March!*

Division Officer. *Right Wheel — March!*

" " *Forward!*

Commander. *Take Division Distance!*

" " *Column — Halt!*

Division Officer. *Halt — Dress!*

Commander. *Left into Line — Wheel — March!*

Division Officer. *Left Wheel — Halt — Dress!*

20
Example.

Explanation. The divisions can also lead out by ranks of threes, and countermarch; but when a division consists of twelve men, either can be practised, to countermarch and charge front; when in half-squadrons or column of companies, threes should at all times be preferred. The rank should be designated in the order.

83. To form column of divisions from ranks of threes, rear in front, and charge.

Form column of division to the rear.

By Commander. Right of Divisions — Right About — March!

By Division Officers. Threes — Right About Wheel — March! — Halt — Dress!

Explanation. When the order is given, at the word, March! each division officer will order their threes, which are on the right of his division, to the right about, halt and dress. The
remainder of his division will form on the left of the threes already formed.

Form column of divisions to the rear, rear in front (from ranks of threes) by left about wheel, and form.

By Commander.  *Rear in Front — To the Rear, Form Divisions — March!*

Division Officer.  *Left, Wheel up — Left Wheel — March! — Halt — Dress!*

*Explanation.* At the order by the division officers, *Left, Wheel up!* the line is formed in natural order, and the second order, *Left Wheel!* will form the column of divisions, rear in front, prepared for the charge. Form and charge in column of divisions to the rear, by successive formation in rear of the first. (This is also from ranks of threes.)

By Commander.  *Form Column of Divisions to the Rear, in the Rear of the First — March!*

First Division Officer.  *Threes Right About — Form Division — March!*

By Division Officers successively as they arrive in the rear of the formed division.  *Right About — Form Division — March!*

*Explanation.* When the order is given, the leading threes are wheeled about to the right and formed. The remainder will successively be formed in like manner, in the rear of the division formed. The order will designate the formation, whether close order or division distance. Thus a charge can alternately be made by a retreating rank.
DIVISION THIRD.

SUBDIVISION FOURTH.

REVIEWS.

CONTENTS.

Receiving the General. | Reception of the Standard.
Marching past. | Salute with the Standard.
Inspecting Review.

Reviews. — To review, is to survey or inspect officers, men, and horses of a troop, squadron or regiment; to become minutely acquainted with the exact condition and state of their arms and equipments; their organization and formation; and to superintend their movements and exercise.

Reviews may be divided into General and Inspecting Reviews. The former are usually attended by a general officer; the latter by some officer specially charged with that duty.

General Review. — At a general review, the regiment or squadron will be drawn up in line. Swords, excepting those of the commissioned officers, are not to be drawn till the general approaches.

Opening of the Ranks, and receiving the General. — When the general has taken his post at the camp color, in front of the centre (of the line,)

Commander, (will order,) Rear Rank will take open order!

" Rear Rank — Rein back — March!

Half-squadron Officer. Rear Rank — Rein back — March!

Explanation. At the caution to take open order, a marker
SQUADRON EVOLUTIONS.

takes post three horses' length in the rear of each flank of the front rank. At the command, Rear Rank, — Open Order, — March! the rear rank will rein back, till it gains the distance, and dress by the markers on the flanks.

The officers advance two horses' length, in front of their troops. The squadron officers (if a regiment is to be reviewed) are to take post two horses' length in front of the line of officers, before the centre of their squadrons, and the commander before the centre of the regiment, two horses' length in advance of the line of squadron officers. The standard officers advance the length of a horse in front of the front rank, with the colors furled.

In this position, the adjutant announces to the general that the regiment is prepared, and in readiness to receive him. The general will approach on the right. The commander will order swords to be drawn as soon as he turns, to approach the right, (being immediately in front, and at the same distance from the line as when fronting the centre, having marched in front of the right flank, parallel from his position in the centre.) When about one hundred yards from the line, the trumpet-major will order the trumpets to sound the parade march, and the commander will order the regiment to Carry Swords!

The standards are then unfurled. The general passes in front of the officers, from right to left, the trumpets sounding. The standard officer salutes, when the general is eight yards to the right, by lowering the colors, on the right side of the horse's head; he will raise and pass them circularly over the horse's head to the left, then elevate them to the usual position.

The commander will order Slope Swords! after the general arrives at, and passes the left flank.

The general passes along the rear of the serrefile rank, to the right of the regiment, where the commander meets him, and receives his orders for marching past.

The general then takes his post on the left of the camp
color, in front of the regiment, a little advanced, with his aids on his right, about the length of a horse, retired.

Marching Past.

Commander. The Regiment will take close order!

" Rear Rank, front, form close order! — March!

Squadron Officer. Rear Rank, close order — March!

Commander. Line will Wheel in Column of Divisions — Right in Front! — Divisions, Right wheel, — March!

Division Officers. Right wheel — March!

Explanation. At the command to Take close Order, officers left about, and front the regiment; at March! the rear rank moves up to close order, and the officers return to their posts, the serrefiles to the rear by passing the intervals, the leaders, &c., by passing round the left flank of the front rank of divisions. The standard-bearers rein back into their places, in the front rank.

The squadron (or regiment, for this is suitable for either) is now wheeled into column of divisions by command of their officers.

The regiment will now march on a parallelogram, on the walk, and pass the general, — the right flank of the column within six yards of his horse, in the following order; the commander, at the head of the trumpeters, who are in two ranks, at the head of the column, with the trumpet-major on the right; the commanders of squadrons, at the head of their squadrons; the sergeant-major, and quarter-master will be in the rear of the left squadron, followed by the division of appui, which is succeeded by the adjutant.

By the Commander. The Column will advance. Three markers will trot out, and mark the first, second, and third parallelograms.

Commander. Column, Forward — March!

Squadron and Division Officers. Forward — March!

The commander will lead off the right the length of the
SQUADRON EVOLUTIONS.

column, wheel the head to the left at the first angle, and advance to the second angle, which is on a line within six yards of the general. The head of the column wheels to the left at the second angle, and advances towards the general. The last division having wheeled, the commander will order, Carry Swords! By squadrons successively.

The first Squadron Officer. Carry Swords!

Division Officers. Carry Swords!

Note. — This order will be given when within ten yards of the general. The trumpets will commence sounding when within thirty yards of the general. After the front squadron has passed about ten yards, swords will be sloped.

The next squadron officer will give the order, Carry Swords! which will be repeated by division officers.

The squadron officers will, previous to the order to carry swords, order, Open Order! — March! Close order will again be formed immediately, as swords are sloped.

The commander having saluted, and passed the general five yards, turns to the right, returns his sword, trots up and posts himself on the right of the general, to receive any remarks he may please to make.

The officer leading the first squadron conducts the column, and wheels the head about at the third marker, who is supposed to be posted the full extent of the regiment, on the right of the general, and orders Brisk — Trot! which is repeated by the left squadron officers. The column trots past the general to the right of the ground. No salute will be paid in this movement, the officers being employed in dressing and conducting their divisions correctly. The head of the column will wheel to the right at the first angle, march to the right flank of the original alignment, and form line.

If accompanied by infantry, the regiment, after marching past the general, wheels to the left, at the third marker, marches to the left flank of the alignment, then wheels to the left, marches on the original alignment, and wheels into line.
The general, accompanied by the commander, then advances to the centre of the regiment, and gives his orders for exercise and movements.

INSPECTING REVIEW.

At an inspecting review, the regiment is drawn up as described for a general review. With officers advanced, the inspector, accompanied by the colonel, passes along the front of the regiment, from right to left, and receives the salute of the officers and men, as in the general review; the trumpets sounding according to his rank. He then returns to the right, between the ranks, and directs the commander to wheel into column of troops.

Commander. The Regiment — will break into Column of Companies — for Inspection.

Commander. By Troops — Right Wheel — March!

Squadron Officer. Companies — Right Wheel — March!

Commanders of Troops. Halt — Dress!

Open Order — March!

The ranks open, officers advance two horses' length to the front, and close to the centre. The trumpeters form on the right of their respective troops. Standard-bearers take post in the centre of their troops, as soon as the wheel into column is completed. The inspector, accompanied by the commander, begins with the right troop, receives the inspection report from the captain, examines the officers, sergeants, and trumpeters. The swords and pistols are then inspected.

The captain will then order the troop to dismount, link, and advance to the front, and dress in two ranks. The inspector then examines the horse equipments, dismounts and inspects the men, their equipments, dress, &c. All deficiencies and errors must be pointed out to the captain, and directions given for their remedy.

The inspector then mounts, and with the colonel and adjutant, proceeds to the next troop, and makes a similar inspection.
The troops remain dismounted till the inspection of the whole are completed. The inspector, commander, and adjutant return to the centre, and the commander orders a trumpeter to sound boots and saddles! The several captains mount their troops, and the commander orders

*The Regiment — will Wheel — into Line!*

Squadron Officer. *Companies — Left into Line — Wheel — March!*

Captains. *Rear Rank — Close Order — March!*

" *Halt — Dress!*

The column wheels into line, standards return to their places in the centre of their squadrons, officers to their posts in line, for exercise.

At an inspection, the men should be clean and well dressed, their accoutrements nicely adjusted, arms in good order, horses clean and trimmed, equipments completely and properly placed, and every article in order for action.

The inspector, in his report, will remark, minutely and comparatively, on the performances of the squadrons; particularly on their marches, formations, accuracy in preserving distances in column, wheelings; charge in line uniform and steady, without flanking from right or left of any portion of the column, crossing or breaking ranks; if the officers are exact in their personal movements, sufficiently loud to be heard the extent of their respective commands, decided and pointed in their commands, intelligent, and patient; the non-commissioned officers and soldiers understand their duty, ride well, and the horses are active, vigorous and well broken.

He should examine the orderly books of the regiment and troops, to see if the orders are registered, returns inserted, and every thing properly arranged.

When the inspection is required to be very minute, and a great variety of movements performed, it may be necessary to continue the inspection two or three days. This will be indis-
pensable, when the weather is unusually warm, to avoid too great fatigue for the horses.

**FORMATION OF THE ESCORT OF THE STANDARD.**

The squadrons of a regiment, commencing with the first, furnish in turn the escort of the standard.

The captain commanding, and the second captain alternately in command of this escort.

It is composed of two divisions.

The first division of the escort, furnishes the advance guard, composed of two men in front with drawn swords; a corporal and three men with drawn swords, march ten paces from them.

The trumpeters formed by threes and conducted by the adjutant, march ten paces from the corporal and three men.

The rest of the division, with drawn swords, having a lieutenant at its head, march by threes, ten paces from the trumpeters.

The standard-bearer follows immediately after, between two sergeants.

The second division, having the second lieutenant at its head, with drawn swords, marching by threes, follows the standard-bearer.

The second division furnishes the rear guard, which is composed of a corporal and three men, who march with drawn swords ten paces in the rear of the second division.

Two other men, with drawn swords, march ten paces in the rear of the corporal and three men.

The captain marches four paces from the left flank, opposite to the standard-bearer.

This detachment having arrived where the standard is kept, without sounding the trumpets, is there formed in line.

**RECEPTION OF THE STANDARD.**

The adjutant dismounts, takes the standard, and gives it to the standard-bearer.
As soon as the standard appears, the captain orders Carry Swords, the trumpets sound to the standard.

After this signal has been twice repeated, the captain orders Slope Swords, and breaks in the same order in which he came; the trumpets sounding the march.

When the standard arrives, the colonel orders the swords to be drawn; the trumpets cease to sound, and will retire to their post with the rest of the trumpeters, twenty-five paces in the rear of the centre, (passing in the rear.)

The standard-bearer, accompanied by the escort formed in four subdivisions, marches from right to left in front of the line, pass round the left flank and form in their place in line. When the escort is in front of the right flank, the colonel orders Carry Swords, and when the escort is beyond the left flank, swords will be sloped.

The standard receives the same honors on its departure as on its arrival; and is escorted back to the colonel’s quarters in the order prescribed above.

On foot, the escort is composed in the same manner, and the standard receives the same honors.

Salute with the Standard.

When the standard is to pay honors, the standard-bearer salutes in the following manner, in two motions:

1. At four paces from the person who is to be saluted, lower the lance gently to the front, bending as near to the horizontal line as possible.

2. Raise the lance gently when the person saluted has passed four paces. (For a troop receiving and lodging the Standard, see p. 93.)
DIVISION FOURTH.

SUBDIVISION FIRST.

TRUMPET AND BUGLE SOUNDINGS.

The trumpet or bugle soundings are divided into soundings for exercise and movements, and those for duty in camp and garrison. Trumpeters must be well versed in the soundings, quick in giving them when ordered, and always able to determine instantly which are adapted to any movement that may be ordered by the commanding officer.

Sounds for Exercise and Movements.

1. The March.
2. Trot.
3. Gallop or Canter.
4. Charge.
5. Halt.
6. Retreat.
7. Rally.
8. Turn out Skirmishers.
10. Call in Skirmishers.

The March—is sounded when a body is to move from the ground.

The Trot, Gallop and Charge—will be given when a body is moving by direction of the commander; and will be, by the proper officers to conduct the movement, instantly followed.

The Charge—is to be continued by all the trumpets during the charge, unless otherwise ordered.
TRUMPET AND BUGLE SOUNDINGS.

The Halt — is sometimes used as a signal to halt, without the voice, but this should always instantly follow.

Example. Suppose a body advancing or retiring, on the gallop or full speed, the commander directs the signal halt, each officer instantly gives the word halt with an elevated voice.

The Retreat — is given at the caution of the commander, in which the officers directing the several parts of the line will instantly give the order.

The Rally — is used to form a body, which has been broken, or is retreating by order of the commander.

Turn Out Skirmishers — is given by direction of the commander, when they are to advance on the enemy. The proper officers will conduct the movement without delay.

Skirmishers Cease Firing. — This signal is given to direct the skirmishers to cease firing, and must be repeated by the advanced trumpeters. The skirmishers are not to return at this signal, but remain advanced near the enemy.

Call in Skirmishers. — This signal is given by order of the commander, and will be repeated by the trumpeter or trumpeters, with the skirmishers. It is to call them back to the body from which they were detached.

All signals given with the caution must be short, but very distinct.

As it is essential that the officers and men should be well acquainted with the signals, they should be frequently sounded in their hearing, and explained by the trumpet-majors. And the commander should often perform the movements by them in aid of the voice, and especially those adopted for attack and defence.

When orders are issued for parades, guard mounting, &c., the trumpet soundings must be regulated according to the hour mentioned for parade.

For example: — if the orders were that the regiment would parade, in marching review, or field day order, to-morrow morning at 7 o'clock, the soundings would be
CAVALRY DRILL.

For stables, at 4 o'clock.
Boots and saddles, 6 "
To horse, at half past 6 "
General parade, at 7 "

If in watering order, the watering call sounds half an hour before the general parade.

If for foot parade or guard mounting, the parade call sounds half an hour before the general parade.
DIVISION FOURTH.

SUBDIVISION SECOND.

CAMP AND FIELD DUTY.

CONTENTS.

Camp Duty, 
Outposts and Picket Guards, 
Instruction for Pickets, 
Patrols and Reconnoitring Parties, 
Trumpet Soundings for Duty in Camp, 
Signals by Telegraphs, 

Morning Inspection, 
Police of the Camp, 
Decampment and March of an Army, 
General Orders, 
Order of March.

CAMP DUTY.

When a regiment of cavalry encamps separately from infantry, sentries sufficient must be furnished to form a chain on all sides of the regiment. In such case a second camp guard must be stationed in the rear, and they will extend their sentries round the flanks.

The different guards of the camp are formed at the sound of the trumpet, and sent to their posts at an hour appointed by the commander in chief.

The guards which mount on foot are formed by the adjutant before the centre of the regiment, in one or two ranks, according to their numbers, and sent to their posts under their officer at the hour assigned in orders.

All guards (excepting those which are honorary) should consist of men sufficient for three reliefs. For example: if a post requires ten sentries, thirty privates are requisite; if fifteen are required, forty-five will be the number. The officers and non-commissioned officers are to be apportioned to the guards according to exigencies.
Each regiment will furnish three guards, called the camp, standard, and quarter guards, which mount without horses—they are for the security of the camp, and to preserve good order and discipline. The camp guard of the front line is placed three hundred paces in front of the sergeants' tents; the standard guard twenty feet before the centre street; and the quarter guard twenty yards in the rear of the line of kitchens.

The camp guard may consist of one subaltern, one sergeant, two corporals, one trumpeter, and twenty-one privates. It will furnish seven sentries, viz. one before the guard, three on the right and three on the left. These sentries, with those of both lines, forming a chain in front and rear of the camp.

The standard guard may consist of one sergeant, two corporals and fifteen privates, and will post five sentries, one before the guard, and two on each side, equally divided in front of the regiment, and all in line.

The quarter guard may consist of one sergeant, one corporal, and twelve men, and will post four sentries. The first in the rear of the guard, the second on the right, the third on the left, behind the centre of the wings of the regiment, all in line, and the fourth at the door of the commanding officer.

The whole of the guards within the limits of the camp are to mount with swords and pistols; during the day, swords are to be drawn and placed at the slope, and the pistols slung at the waist by the belt of the cartridge box; at dusk, swords are returned, and pistols drawn and held in the right hand, the arms folded, and the pistol resting over the elbow of the left arm.

**NOTE.** If cavalry encamp without infantry, and are armed with carbines, in all of their camp duty their carbines will be used. On this service, the carbine seems to be in many cases indispensably requisite. A few of them may be transported in the wagons with the baggage.

**OUTPOSTS AND PICKET GUARDS.**

These are usually formed by detachments from the line, and
their strength must depend on the nature of the ground they are intended to occupy, as well as the proximity of the army.

If the country is open and level, the cavalry will furnish the pickets most advanced towards the enemy. The officers on this duty are particularly required to render themselves judges of their situations, and to post their vedettes in the most proper places.

The pickets are sometimes stationed within the limits of the camp, and always in readiness to mount and move on the shortest notice. The horses are to be saddled, and the riders armed and booted, ready to mount. Such guards are called in-lying pickets. The duty of pickets are sometimes entrusted wholly to the light troops, in which case they are under the immediate direction of some detached general or field officer.

The pickets from the line are generally formed on the grand parade by the officer who is to command them.

The detachments are sent from the regiment under the care of the sergeant-majors, where they draw up in line in two ranks successively as they arrive, the commissioned officers advancing three horses' length before the front rank, and the non-commissioned officers falling back two yards in the rear.

The whole are then inspected, to see if the horses, arms and equipments, are in complete order for action. When any are found unfit for duty, the sergeant-major conducts them back and procures others, which he conducts to the parade, where he is then discharged by the brigade-major of the day.

If the number of men is sufficient to form a squadron, viz. eight officers, eight sergeants, eight corporals and sixty-four privates, they are drawn up in two ranks and formed in squadron. The major commands.

If the guard does not amount to sixty-four, they are formed in two divisions, and four subdivisions, as prescribed for a single troop.

If the number is less than thirty-two, the guard may be drawn up in one rank, and divided as a troop.
The formation completed, the commander marches off for his post, conducted by a guide from the old guard, or by one acquainted with the position to be taken. No trumpets to sound during the march out, or returning.

**RELIEF OF GUARDS AND VEDETTES.**

The relief of guards in camp will be once in twenty-four hours; the outposts and picket guards will ordinarily be relieved in the same manner, but this must depend on their distance from camp, and other circumstances which may require their continuing on duty for several days. In this case, they must previously be notified, that they may prepare themselves accordingly.

When the new guard arrive at the post, the officer of the old guard, having it mounted, commands *Carry Swords.* The new guard marches past in column, (after passed) halts and wheels into line ten yards on the right of the old guard, both fronting towards the enemy, and dressed on the same alignment. The commander of the new guard then orders

*Attention — Carry Swords!*

The commanders then meet before the interval, and the relieving officer receives his orders from the commander of the old guard. Both return to their command.

The commander of the new guard then orders

*Relieving, Non-commissioned Officers to the Front — March!*

The right sergeant in the serrefile rank, and the right covering corporal trot forward four horses' length, turn about and front the guard. The orderly sergeant of the old guard then tells off as many vedettes from the right of the new guard as are then posted, and the advanced sergeant of the new guard, accompanied by the advanced corporal, and one from the old guard as a guide, wheels off the relief, and proceeds to relieve the old vedettes, beginning with the one posted at the guard.

At dusk, all vedettes return swords, and draw the left pistol, which they keep in the right hand, generally inclined forward on the right knee.
CAMP AND FIELD DUTY.

The method of relieving vedettes after dark, varies a little from the above. The relief marches in the same manner, with swords drawn; and on approaching the vedette, is challenged by him, *Who comes there?* The relief halts, and the conductor replies, *Relief!* The vedette, *Advance Officer with countersign!* Placing the pistol in the left hand, ready to cock, the conductor of the relief advances within three or four yards of the vedette, and gives the countersign in a low voice; when, if right, the vedette replies, *Relief — Advance!* The relief advances with the conductor, who marches it up within twelve yards of the vedette, and halts. The man on the right then advances with the conductor, receives the orders of the post, returns swords, and draws the left pistol; the old vedette returns his pistol, and marches back with the conductor to the relief; forms on the left flank, and draws sword.

The above will apply to the relief of the camp guards and sentries.

**INSTRUCTIONS FOR PICKETS.**

The commanding officer of a picket should consider the importance of the trust reposed in him; for on the due execution and faithful discharge thereof, depends not only the safety of the guard, but frequently that of the army, from which he is detached. On this service he will have ample opportunity of displaying his judgment, skill, and bravery.

The commander should endeavor to make himself master of his situation, by careful examination, not only of the ground he occupies, but the heights within musket shot; the roads and paths leading to or near his post, ascertaining their breadth and practicability for cavalry and cannon. He should examine the hollow ways that may cover the approach of an enemy. He should not be satisfied until he has fully investigated every point, from which he is most likely to be attacked in any manner, by cavalry or infantry. By these means he will be quali-
fied to take suitable measures to prevent the possibility of being surprised; and should an attack be made during the night, from the previous acquired knowledge of the ground, through his investigation, he will at once form a just estimate of the nature of the attack, and would not be at a loss for defence, with promptness and decision.

An intelligent and careful officer will strengthen his post in front, with pointed stakes erected in the ground, breast high. Trees felled across the road, and pits dug in front, on those points most easily assailable by the enemy. For this purpose, suitable axes and other implements should be carried by the guard.

When a picket is to remain out for some time, sufficient provisions and dry forage must be carried from camp for subsistence. The hay may be transported in wagons, or twisted in ropes, trussed up and carried in the forage sacks, or fastened behind the saddles.

The orderly sergeant of the picket will take down the names of the men as follows.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>No. of Post</th>
<th>Names of 1st Relief</th>
<th>Do. 2d Relief</th>
<th>Do 3d Relief</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Explanation.* Suppose the guard to consist of twenty-four men, and to furnish eight vedettes. They are divided into three reliefs, and the posts for the vedettes numbered, begin-
ning with that before the guard; each man's name is placed against the number of the post at which he will be placed during the time he is on guard.

The vedettes are ordinarily relieved once in two hours. Thus: — Suppose the men of the first relief go on at ten o'clock in the morning; they remain till twelve. They are relieved by the second relief, which remain till two. The third relieves the second at two, and remains till four. The first is again put on duty at four. By this table an officer may determine what particular man was, at any time of the day, on duty, or not; and if on duty, where was his post.

Before a relief is marched off, they must be inspected by the commander, as well as the corporal, to see whether they are sober, their horses properly saddled, their arms loaded, primed, and in good order, and every article in its proper condition and place. The most resolute and intelligent men should be posted where the greatest danger is expected.

The safety of the post will depend upon the vigilance of the officers and men. The greatest care to avoid a surprise should be taken. This is their first duty, to become acquainted with their situation; secondly, by being acquainted with their situation, they will apprehend no surprise; being fully acquainted with the manner they could defend themselves, they will certainly have the more commanding confidence in prosecuting a defence.

On perceiving a small party approaching, he will challenge briskly, *Who comes there?* and never suffer more than one to approach till the countersign is given. If the person has not the countersign, the vedette will order him to stand, and if within hearing of the guard, call a sergeant, by a preconcerted signal, or hallooing. If the vedettes are posted double, one may approach toward them and challenge. If there be any thing suspicious in their appearance, or language, the vedette is not to let them pass immediately, even if they have the countersign, but call a sergeant, or conduct them to the guard, the other vedette
remaining on the post. If the party are considerably numerous, one of the vedettes will notify the guard of their arrival. The commander will immediately mount the guard, if not already on horseback, and detach a party to examine and bring them in. The officer will examine them critically, inform himself of the cause of their being there, and of every circumstance that may tend to an explanation. Remembering that distrust is the mother of security, he must demand the watchword, their pass or written order, and if found correct, and he is satisfied in every respect that there is no risk, he will permit them to pass.

If on being ordered to stand, the person will not obey, the vedette, after the established challenge, will fire his pistol, reload as soon as possible, and retire to the guard, or remain on his post, as circumstances may require.

A vedette must not be allowed to smoke in the night, nor at any time to sing, or whistle, or make any noise; nor place his cap so low as to cover his ears; but always be alert, and listen to every noise. He should strictly observe his orders, ask no reasons for them, nor dare to think them of little importance.

No vedette should be placed at such a distance from the guard as to be out of the hearing of a pistol shot. The officer of the day usually selects the places for the guard and the vedettes; but circumstances may render it requisite for the commander of the picket to post more vedettes in the night, or alter their position; but he must report such additional numbers out, or the alteration of their positions, to the officer of the day.

If a flag from the enemy approaches, which is usually attended with a trumpet sounding, or drum beating the chamade, the vedette will order it to halt at some distance from the post; if there be two vedettes, one will advance, and cause it to halt, the other will go back to the guard, and report the circumstance. An officer will advance to the flag, and receive the communication which is desired to be made, and if it be only
of small importance, will give a short receipt, with a pencil; but if the letter, or despatches, are directed to head-quarters, or to the commanding-general, and require a speedy answer, or are required to be delivered by the officer of the flag in person, the trumpet, or drum, will be detained at, or near the guard, a receipt given for them, and sent to head-quarters, by an officer, and two or three men of the guard, who will bring him back with the same precautions. If it is not required of the officer of the flag to deliver the despatches personally, he may be detained at, or near the guard, a receipt given for them, and sent by an officer to head-quarters. No person will be allowed to have any conversation with the officer or men connected with the flag, so long as they are detained: in every other respect they, and the flag, are to be treated with becoming civility.

All deserters in the night are to be detained at the guard, and interrogated, or immediately sent to the commander-in-

chief.

If, when night commences, no countersign or parole has been communicated to the commander, he will send a trusty sergeant for them to the proper officer, and in the mean time give a countersign of his own, till the ordered one arrives.

If one of the guard deserts, the countersign may be changed along the whole chain of outposts, of which the officer of the day must be immediately notified.

A picket, if possible, should be posted, behind a small elevation, or wood, in a hollow, or behind something that will prevent its being seen by the enemy at a distance; care should be taken that its operations will not be impeded by these covers.

During the day the vedettes should be posted on elevated ground, which overlooks the country in front, and conveniently, behind large trees, brush fence, or something that will cover them from the enemy’s riflemen. In the night the low grounds must be guarded, and the vedettes may, with safety, be posted in open fields and plains.

Vedettes are not only to observe the enemy’s movements, but
be attentive to their comrades; if any are missing from their posts, or are seen to desert to the enemy, communication of it should as soon as possible be made known to the guard.

During the day the picket may be permitted to dismount their horses, but constantly to keep the bridle reins in their hands, ready to mount.

In the night a part of the guard must constantly remain on horseback, and be relieved alternately. When the enemy are near, on no account must any be permitted to lie down and sleep, but all must keep by their horses, and be in readiness to mount.

During the day, and especially if the weather is warm, the horses must be watered two or three times. If water be at a distance, not more than half or one fourth of the picket must be sent at a time to the watering place, under the care of an officer, who will take every precaution to avoid a surprise. The officers should endeavor to find out some place for water in an open field, distant from a wood capable of covering a party of riflemen. If water is not to be procured in the field, resort must be had to the neighboring villages.

Officers of the picket will frequently visit the videttes during the day, to see if they are fully acquainted with their orders, and understand their duty.

The commanding officer should be furnished with a good spying glass, to watch the enemy's movements, and a dark lantern, and materials for striking a light for the transaction of business in the dark.

If it is sufficiently cold to require fires, they should be kindled at some distance in the rear, in a hollow way, or behind a pond, to be as much concealed as possible. The men will warm themselves by turns, and not more than two or three at a time.

All authentic intelligence must be immediately reported to head-quarters, and to the commanders of the neighboring pickets, and troops near him. A written report should also be made
every evening, and sent by a non-commissioned officer to the officer of the day, particularizing every thing important to be known.

Between every relief the vedettes must be visited by a patrol, and in the night several of these, under careful non-commissioned officers, should be sent to visit the roads leading to the enemy. At daybreak the vedettes last relieved, may patrol the fields and country in front, to find out the enemy who may have approached to attack the post.

If there is a canal or river, over which the conveyance is a bridge, that may render facilities to an enemy, the planks should be taken up and secreted in some place, from which they can easily be taken and replaced, should it be requisite to cross the bridge, and reconnoitre the enemy.

When the enemy is near, and in considerable strength, it would be advisable, as soon as dusk commences, to draw back two or three hundred yards, and take a new position for the guards or vedettes. This must be done under the orders of the officer of the day.

If the picket is compelled to fall back upon the camp, it must retreat slowly, and in good order. During the retreat, flankers must be detached to turn the enemy's wings, and retard his advance, by the firing of pistols, sounding of trumpets, and make every appearance of opposition in their power.

On the first appearance of the enemy, the commander will send notice to the camp, particularizing, as much as possible, their strength, species of troops, and every material circumstance, and if they are much superior in point of numbers, of the reality he must be sure; and he is to expect no reinforcement; he will call in his vedettes, return towards the camp, and pass through such ways, as will render his retreat safe and easy. Should the enemy press hard he will retire briskly; and on arrival at the camp, pass the intervals of the squadron, and form in the rear.

*Patrols and Reconnoitering Parties.* — Patrons are small par-
ties, consisting of six, eight, or, if requisite, a larger number. They are intended to ensure the tranquillity of a post, examine the vedettes, the roads and country in front, and to discover the approach of the enemy at a distance. They are usually commanded by the most intelligent, skilful, and brave sergeants.

On the march the men move three or four hundred yards in front, especially when marching in a road.

In the day, on arriving at a hill, one or two men may be ordered to the top to view the neighboring country, and by a previously concerted signal, inform the leader of any discovery made.

In passing a defile or pond, the men may separate and follow in single file at some distance, but always in view of each other. The patrol should, previous to advancing, examine the defile.

Patrols who visit the vedettes and sentries usually consist of a non-commissioned officer and three or four men, all in single file, officer leading. When challenged, the leader will reply, Patrol.

Patrols on their march out must proceed very slowly, seldom out of a walk; the men in front will often halt and listen, and occasionally dismount and lay their ears close to the ground, to listen for the march of cavalry or artillery.

When a patrol discovers a party approaching, and it is not known whether it is an enemy, the leader may secrete his patrol if the place offers a suitable cover, and if he finds the party superior in number, let it pass; or he may hail, and if it proves an enemy, rush forward in full vigor, sword in hand. Firing pistols is requisite.

When two patrols meet, one will challenge Who comes there? The patrol challenged, answers patrol—the other orders, Stand patrol! advance officer and give the watchword. The officer advances and gives the word in a low voice, and if right, the leader of the other will give the countersign, that both may be satisfied. They will inquire concerning discoveries made, and from what guard the patrols are detached.
Signals are sometimes ordered, by which patrols may ascertain each other.

Reconnoitering parties are usually commanded by an officer and non-commissioned officer; the number of privates are in accordance with the nature of the duty and distance assigned to them. The usual number is from fifteen to thirty men.

The duty of these parties is to examine a country of considerable extent, to note the roads, towns and villages, rivers, ponds, morasses, mountains, hills, defiles, bridges, ravines, woods and forests, the enemy's position, and every thing important to be known.

The officer should furnish himself with a sketch book, in which he will insert his remarks and sketches, and every particular appertaining to his duty.

In an enemy's country the greatest precaution must be used to avoid ambuscades and surprises. A van and rear guard with a few flankers will be requisite, where there is a possibility of an attack.

When the object of the party is merely to reconnoitre, the commander will, if possible, avoid an engagement, and proceed with as much secrecy as the nature of the reconnoissance will admit.

If the party passes a bridge, and are soon to return, the commander may leave a few men under a non-commissioned officer, who will disjoint the planks, and be ready on the return of the party to replace them; and if pursued by the enemy, to take up, if time will admit, the entire bridge. Trees should be cut down across the road, wagons, carts, &c. &c., prepared to impede the progress of the enemy, in case they drive back the party, and pursue with superior force.

For short reconnoissances, a few of the most alert men and active horses should be selected. If it is to examine the enemy's position, the officer will ascend some neighboring mountain or other elevation, and with a spy glass view every part of his encampment within sight, and note down his dis-
coveries, which will be included in his report to the commander.

If compelled to retreat from a superior force, the officer will place in his rear some of his best-mounted men, and use every means in his power to retard their pursuit, and make a judicious retreat.

TRUMPET SOUNDINGS FOR DUTY IN CAMP.

The daily signals of the infantry begin on the right of the whole, and are followed in succession, through the line to the left, to facilitate which the drummer's call is given by the drummers of the police a quarter of an hour before the time for the signals, and the drummers assemble before the centre of their regiments, and when the signal begins on the right they commence beating according to the regulation.

The daily signals of the cavalry are sounded at the same time. When the drummers beat the call, the trumpeters of the cavalry police sound the trumpeters' call, and the trumpeters assemble before their regiments. When the beat begins on the right, the trumpeters commence sounding, passing along the front to the right of their regiments, thence back to the left, and then to the centre, where they finish.

SOUNDINGS FOR CAMP.

1st. Soundings previous to a March.

Boots and Saddles. — This is sounded only when the whole are to march, and is the signal for the men to boot, saddle, strike and pack up tents and baggage, and prepare for a movement.

To Horse — is the signal to mount the horses, and repair to the colors.

The March — is for the whole to move.

2d. Duty Soundings.

Reveille, or Morning Call — is sounded at day-break, to advertise the army that the night is past; that all are to rise, dress, and prepare for duty, and the videttes and sentries to cease challenging.
Water Call — is sounded when any are to go from the camp for water.

Stable Call — will be sounded immediately after reveille, forty minutes before noon, and again immediately after retreat, for watering, feeding, and attending to the horses.

Parade Call — is the signal for assembling for the purpose of calling the roll and inspecting the men for duty, and attending to orders.

Retreat — is sounded at sunset, for calling the roll, warning the men for duty and hearing the orders for the next day. This is also used in the exercise for a retreat.

The Watch — is the signal for repairing to quarters for the night. No soldier must leave his tent or quarters after this signal is sounded, unless permitted by an officer.

Alarm — is the signal for getting under arms and repairing to the alarm post on a sudden occasion.

Chamade, or Parley — is used when a conference is desired with the enemy to make some proposals. Another, called the Appel, is used for the same purpose.

Officers’ Call, Sergeant’s Call, Trumpeters’ Call, Dinner Call,

Peas upon a trencher.

These are established by custom in Camp.

Other signals are adopted for light troops in the field, and are for the communication of certain discoveries made by the out parties, or for particular movements. They are as follow:

Signals, to extend — close — fire — cease firing — incline to the right — incline to the left — on discovering the enemy — if infantry — if cavalry — if infantry and cavalry — assembly of officers.

The signals are given by the trumpet or bugle, and are adapted to cavalry or infantry.

Signals by Telegraphs. — Telegraphs of different descriptions are now in use; they are in sight of each other, and are viewed
with telescopes. Certain positions signify letters of the alphabet, by which words and sentences are communicated. Others give numbers which refer to words numbered in a small dictionary, by which sentences are made out with great facility and expedition. Each station is furnished with a dictionary, and a person well acquainted with the signals, who notes down the numbers.

Example. Suppose it were required to communicate, *A body of infantry are approaching*. A preparatory signal is first made, to inform that some intelligence is to be transmitted, followed by the signals for the digits composing the number standing against the word, which number being found in the dictionary, points to the word body. The number for the word infantry is next communicated, and the word found and written down; and so on till all the principal words are communicated.

**Morning Inspection.**—Every morning, previous to parading in squadron or regiment, the captains will inspect their several troops. After the inspection the morning report is to be made.

**Morning Report of Captain ——’s Troop.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Captains,</td>
<td>1</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lieutenants,</td>
<td>2</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cornets,</td>
<td>1</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sergeants,</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Trumpeters,</td>
<td>1</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rank and File,</td>
<td>40</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>3</td>
<td></td>
<td>57</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Horses,</td>
<td>43</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>4</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>56</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dismounted Men,</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>1</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(Date.)

*Police of the Camp.*—The camp police is regulated by the standing orders of the commanding general, which will be in accordance to circumstances.
A subaltern, four non-commissioned officers, one trumpeter and twenty privates, will every day be appointed, for the police of the regiment, who are not to be absent during the time they are on duty. The officer of the police is to make a general inspection into the cleanliness of the camp, will not suffer fire to be made anywhere but in the kitchens, and cause all dirt to be immediately removed, and either burnt or buried. He is to be present at all distributions in the regiment, and to form and send off all detachments for necessaries.

In case the adjutant is obliged to be absent, the officer of the police is to do his duty till his return, and for that purpose he must attend at the adjutant’s tent, to be ready to receive and distribute any orders that may come for the regiment.

The trumpeter of the police must attend at the adjutant’s tent.

When any of the men want water, they must apply to the officer of the police, who will have the signal sounded, on which all who want water will immediately parade before the centre of the regiment, when the officer of the police will form, and send with them two non-commissioned officers of the police, who are to be answerable that they bring back the whole detachment, and no excesses are committed during their absence. Wood, and all other necessaries are to be brought in the same manner. Except in emergency, not more than one detachment is to be absent at a time.

Decampment and March of an Army. — When the army is to break up its quarters, and move to a new position, the commander-in-chief will give the necessary orders to the quartermaster general, and the general of the day, who will lay out the order of march agreeably to the plan of the general.

If the movement is to commence in the morning, the orders are generally out at retreat-beating the preceding evening. These orders are short, and merely prescribe the order and time of the march, without a detail of the minutiae. Suppose, at retreat-beating, the following is communicated to the troops:
GENERAL ORDER.

Camp at (Date.)

"The army marches tomorrow. The general will beat at three of the clock in the morning, the assembly at four, and the march will commence a quarter of an hour after, from the right, in one column. The brigades will succeed in the order they are encamped, with the field pieces at the head of their respective regiments; the park of artillery will follow the brigades, and the baggage will close the column."

Order of March. — The order of march for the cavalry, heavy artillery and baggage, must be adapted to the nature of the country and other circumstances. If the enemy are in front, the baggage moves in the rear; but if they are in the rear, it moves in front; in both cases under the direction of a guard, commanded by a field officer. Whatever place it may occupy in the line of march, the wagons are to follow, in the same order as their respective regiments, and the wagons of each company, in their numerical order. The field artillery will march with the brigades to which it is attached, unless circumstances determine the general to order otherwise. If the country is open and champaign, the cavalry usually precede the infantry; but if broken and covered, it will succeed the infantry; and it is sometimes accompanied by the horse artillery.

The order of the march being given, the adjutant-general will appoint the field-officers for the advance, baggage, and rear guards, and give the details to the majors of brigades, for their respective quotas of officers and men for the guards. It is the practice in some armies to assign the duty of the guards to particular corps or regiments, by which the delay and trouble of detaching from the several brigades, and forming of the guards, are avoided; and in sudden movements, this seems to be the most eligible method.

At three of the clock in the morning, in accordance with the orders, the beating of the General commences, the cavalry sound
boots and saddles, the infantry and cavalry immediately strike their tents, pack up furniture and equipage, load their wagons, and prepare for the march. If the cavalry are not furnished with wagons, the tents, picket ropes, &c., are loaded upon the barr-ho' ses, which must march with the other baggage of the army, and the cooking utensils must be divided among the men. The officers must superintend the striking of the tents, and loading of the baggage, and see that every article is properly packed, and duly placed.

At the first signal, all general and staff officers' guards, and the camp and quarter guards join their regiments.

At beating the assembly, the trumpets sound to horse. The cavalry immediately mount and form their squadrons in front of their regiments; the infantry form in like manner into battalions. The guards are then ordered to form on the grand parade, and marched by their commander to their assigned places.

The signal for march being given, the whole break into column, the cavalry by subdivisions, and commence the march; the wagons fall into the line as ordered, for which the quartermasters are responsible. The majors of brigades will see that all outposts and pickets are called in at the proper time to their places in column.

The vanguard will march at a distance from the column, more or less, according to its strength and the nature of the country; and must never enter a defile, wood, &c., without first examining it, to avoid falling into ambuscades. It will detach flankers and patrols to reconnoitre and scour all woods, defiles, &c., and should send parties to the top of every neighboring hill, to view the country in front.

On the march no orders are to be communicated by calling out. They must be promulgated from regiment to regiment by the adjutants or brigade majors, or both.

Though troops do not always march in the presence of an enemy, it is of infinite consequence that they should march as
if in the expectation (if not certain) of meeting him. Equal
and well ordered marches contribute not only to the preserva-
tion of the army, but accustom the troops to regularity, and
Teach them at all times to be in readiness to attack or defend.

When a single regiment is to decamp from a village or other
detached post, the colonel or commanding officer will issue his
orders, specifying the time for sounding the necessary signals,
which, like the orders for the march of an army, are usually
given out the evening previous to the march.

The adjutant will appoint the officers for the van, rear and
baggage guards, assemble the orderly sergeants by trumpet sig-
nal from the police trumpeter, and give them the detail of non-
commissioned officers and men required from their respective
troops, and direct them to copy the orders for marching, which
they will deliver to their captains.

The vanguard may consist of a lieutenant, two sergeants, one
trumpeter and thirty-two rank and file; the rear and baggage
guards, of a sergeant, corporal, trumpeter, and eight men each.

Half an hour previous to the time for marching, the trum-
peter of the police will sound the trumpeter's call, to assemble
the trumpeters of the regiment; and at the time mentioned in
the orders the whole are to sound boots and saddles; at the
signal, the whole boot, saddle and bridle horses, pack up furni-
ture and load the baggage. All guards retire to the regiment
and prepare for the march.

When the suitable preparation for the march is executed, the
trumpets sound to horse, the whole mount and form into troops
on their several parade grounds, march to the regimental parade,
where they form into squadrons; the guards are then ordered
by the adjutant to form into corps, and told off into proper di-
visions according to their strength.

The adjutant will inspect their arms, equipments, men and
horses, to see that they are in complete order for action, and if
he finds any man or horse sick or lame, he will send him back
to his troop to be exchanged for another.
The baggage must be placed in the rear of the regiment, and precede the rear guard, if not otherwise ordered; the wagons must be numbered and follow regularly in numerical order. On a march the baggage should be curtailed as much as possible; a superfluity tends greatly to impede the march, and draws with it a thousand inconveniences. When suddenly attacked, it is frequently abandoned to the enemy and lost. It is, therefore, the duty of the commanding officer to permit no one to carry any article that is not absolutely requisite. The officers, on all occasions, will confine themselves to such as are of the first importance.

At the time designated for moving, the trumpets sound a march, the whole wheel by subdivisions, and march, preceded by the vanguard. If the roads are too narrow for subdivisions, the front will be diminished, and if necessary march by files.

When a regiment is to decamp secretly, orders are transmitted to each troop verbally, particularizing the time and order of march. At the time pointed out, the baggage is packed up and loaded, the troops formed as silently as possible. The march commences without the sound of trumpets.
DIVISION FOURTH.

SUBDIVISION THIRD.

STANDING ORDERS.

CONTENTS.

Prisoners.
Cavalry never Surrender.
Sentinels.
Guards.
Alarm Posts.

Positions to be Changed.
Halt and Dress.
Two Troops Meeting.
Posts of Troops in Line.
Words of Command.

PRISONERS.

Prisoners under escort are to be attended on both flanks, front, and their rear, that they are all close and regular, and none escape, and to prevent partial halts. Prisoners must rather be cut down than allowed to get away, and must either be handcuffed or secured with cords.

CAVALRY NEVER TO SURRENDER.

Cavalry ought never to surrender or capitulate if they can cut their way through an enemy, nor should they stand still a moment where they are likely to be attacked. Even in open squares, they ought to be moving about and changing their positions, as many tricks can be played them by a designing mob.

SENTINELS.

No sentinel to pay any compliment after sunset, or know any one after dark except by the countersign.

GUARDS.

All regimental guards will turn out, and present arms to the field officer commanding the regiment, as often as he passes.
STANDING ORDERS.

All guards will get under arms with the greatest alertness whenever a party of men with arms, of whatever denomination they may be, (a corporal's relief excepted) passes near their post.

ALARM POSTS.

Troops will repair to their alarm posts on foot when the bugle sounds. Rouse and turn out to receive orders, unless boots and saddles, or to horse is sounded. They must then prepare to mount and assemble without a moment's loss of time.

POSITIONS TO BE CHANGED.

The positions of regiments and squadrons in brigade are frequently to be changed at exercise, in order that they may be accustomed to move with equal precision on a flank or in the centre of a line.

HALT AND DRESS.

To wheel from line into column, each officer will halt and dress his respective command until the column is ordered forward. The column will then move together.

TWO TROOPS MEETING.

When two troops meet, each will oblique to the left; the junior will carry swords, which will be returned by the senior officer. Should the junior troop have a standard, it will be expected from the senior troop to advance the due respect, and not expect it from the troop with the standard. The troop with the standard will be expected to return the salute. When a troop forms line for another to pass in front, it is considered marked respect.

POST OF TROOPS IN LINE ACCORDING TO RANK.

The senior captain and company is entitled to the right; the second, next in order, which arrangement is to be observed in the entire formation of squadron or regiment. Should the senior captain be absent, his troop will not yield their post in consequence of their commander being absent, but will be as
much entitled to the right, though for the time being under the immediate command of a subaltern.

WORDS OF COMMAND.

Words of command repeated by officers in line or column, are not to be louder than the extent of their command. Every officer is responsible for the performance, silence, and good order of his command.
APPENDIX.

No. 1.

GENERAL REGULATIONS FOR THE ARMY.

CONTENTS.

Salutes.
Escorts of Honor.
Funeral Honors.
Duties in Garrison and Camp.
Beats of the Drum.
Guard Mounting.
Relieving Guards and Sentinels.
Grand Rounds.
Report of Guard Mounting.
Report of Prisoners.
Troops in Campaign.
Order of Encampment.
Working Parties.
Allowance of Camp and Garrison Equipment.
Brevet Pay.
Pay and Subsistence of Officers.
Pay of Engineers, Ordnance, Artillery and Infantry.

Pay of Dragoons.
Allowance of Transportation to Officers.
Allowance of Straw.
Fuel and Quarters.
Clothing Bureau.
Garrison Flag.
Standards and Guidons of the Cavalry.
Ordnance Stations.
Uniform and Dress of the Dragoons.
Undress of Dragoons.
Horse Furniture.
Non-commissioned Officers, Privates and Buglers.
Epaulets.
Furloughs.
Discharges.
Exchange or transfer of Officers.
Transfer of Soldiers.

SALUTES.

The President of the United States, alone, is to receive the national salute.

The national salute is determined by the number of States composing the Union, at the rate of one gun for each State.

The Vice President is to receive a salute of twenty-one guns.

The Heads of the great Executive departments of the national government; the Major General, commanding the army; the Governors of States and Territories, within their respective jurisdictions, seventeen guns.

A Brigadier General, thirteen guns.
Foreign ship of war will be saluted, in return for a similar compliment, gun for gun, on notice being officially received of such intention.

Officers of the navy will be saluted according to rank.

Foreign officers, invited to visit a fort or post, may be saluted according to their relative rank.

Envoys and Ministers of the United States, and foreign powers, are to be saluted with fifteen guns.

All officers of the army, having rank above that of a colonel, whether of the line or staff, by brevet or otherwise, will be complimented, on official visits, by salutes according to their highest rank; provided they be senior to officer in command, where the visit is made.

A general officer will be saluted but once in a year at each post, and only when notice of his intention to visit the post has been given.

Salutes to individuals are to be fired on their arrival only.

A national salute will be fired at meridian, on the anniversary of the Independence of the United States, at each military post and camp.

ESCORTS OF HONOR.

Escorts of honor may be composed of cavalry or infantry, or both, according to circumstances. They are guards of honor for the purpose of receiving and escorting personages of high rank, civil or military. The troops for this purpose, will be selected for their soldierly appearance and superior discipline, and the duty must always be considered as one of high distinction. The manner of receiving and escorting the personage, is as follows:

The escort will be drawn up in line, the centre opposite to the place where the personage presents himself, with an interval between the wings to receive the personage and his retinue. On his appearance, he will be received with the honors due to his rank. When he has taken his place in line, the whole will be wheeled into platoons or companies, as the case may be, and take up the march. The same ceremony will be observed, and the same honors paid, on his leaving the escort.

When the position of the escort is at a considerable distance from the point where the personage is expected to be received, as, for
instance, where a court-yard or wharf intervenes, a double line of sentinels will be posted from that point, to the escort facing inwards, and the sentinels will successively salute as the personage passes.

An officer will be appointed to attend the personage escorted, to bear such communications as he may have to make to the commander of the escort.

FUNERAL HONORS.

On the receipt of official intelligence of the death of the President of the United States, at any port or camp, the commanding officer shall, on the following day, cause a gun to be fired every half hour, beginning at sunrise and ending at sunset. When posts are contiguous, the firing will take place at the post only commanded by the superior officer.

On the day of interment of a Major General Commanding in Chief, a gun will be fired every half hour, until the procession moves, beginning at sunrise.

The funeral escort of a Major General, Commanding in Chief, shall consist of a regiment of infantry, a squadron of cavalry, and six pieces of artillery.

That of a Major General, a regiment of infantry, a squadron of cavalry, and four pieces of artillery.

That of a Brigadier General, a regiment of infantry, one company of cavalry, and two pieces of artillery.

That of a Colonel, a regiment.

That of a Lieutenant Colonel, six companies.

That of a Major, four companies.

That of a Captain, one company.

That of a Subaltern, half a company.

The funeral escort shall always be commanded by an officer of the same rank with the deceased; or, if none such be present, by one of the next inferior grade.

The funeral escort of a non-commissioned staff-officer shall consist of sixteen rank and file, commanded by a sergeant.

That of a sergeant, of fourteen rank and file, commanded by a sergeant.

That of a corporal, of twelve rank and file, commanded by a corporal.
That of a private, of eight rank and file, commanded by a corporal.

The escort will be formed in two ranks, opposite to the quarters or tent of the deceased, with shouldered arms, and bayonets fixed; the artillery and cavalry on the right of the infantry.

On the appearance of the corpse, the officer commanding the escort will command *Present — Arms!* when the honors due to deceased will be paid by the drums and trumpets. The music will then play an appropriate air, and the coffin will be taken to the right, where it will be halted. The commander will next order,


*Column, Forward, Guide right — March!*

The column will be marched, in common time, to appropriate music; and on reaching the grave, will take a direction, that the guides shall be next to the grave. When the centre of the column is opposite to the grave, the commander will order,


The coffin is then brought along the front, and the commander then orders,

*Present — Arms!*

And when the coffin reaches the grave, he adds,


After the funeral service is performed, and the coffin is lowered into the grave, the commander will order,


4. *Load!*

When three rounds of small arms will be fired by the escort, taking care to elevate the pieces. This being done, the commander will order,


The music will not begin to play until the escort is clear of the enclosure, or burying ground.

**DUTIES IN GARRISON AND CAMP.**

**BEATS OF THE DRUM.**

1. The duties in garrison and camp are to be conducted, as far as practicable, in the same manner, and on the same principles.
2. *The Reveille* is to sound or beat at daybreak, and is the signal for the men to rise, and the sentinels to leave off challenging.

3. *The Troop* is to sound or beat at o'clock in the morning, for the purpose of assembling the men for duty and inspection, at guard mounting.

4. *The Retreat* is to sound or beat at sunset, for the purpose of warning the officers and men for duty, and reading the orders of the day.

5. *The Tattoo* is to beat at o'clock, after which no soldier is to be out of tent or quarters.

6. *Peas upon a Trencher*, the signal for breakfast, is to sound or beat at o'clock in the morning.

7. *Roast Beef*, the signal for dinner, is to sound or beat at o'clock; at other times it is the signal to draw provisions.

8. *The Surgeon's Call* is the sound or beat at o'clock, when the sick, able to go out, will be conducted to the hospital by the first sergeants of companies, who will hand to the surgeon a report of all the sick in the company, other than those in hospitals.

9. *The General* is to beat only when the whole army is to march, and is the signal to strike the tents, and prepare for the march.

10. *The Assembly* is the signal to form by company.

11. *To the Color*, is the signal to form by battalion.


13. *The Long-Roll* is the signal for getting under arms, in case of alarm, or the sudden approach of the enemy.

14. *The Parley* is to desire a conference with the enemy.

15. *The Stable Call*, in cavalry corps, will be sounded immediately after reveille, forty minutes before noon; and again, immediately after retreat, for watering, feeding, and attending to the horses.

**Signals.**


17. *To go for Water*, two strokes, and a flam.

18. *For Fatigue Party* — pioneer's march.

19. *Adjutant's Call* — first part of the troop.

20. *First Sergeant's Call* — one roll, and four taps.

21. *Sergeant's Call* — one roll, and three taps.

22. *Corporal's Call* — one roll, and two taps.
23. For the Drummers — the Drummer's Call.

24. The different daily beats shall be given on the right, and be immediately followed by the whole army; to facilitate which, the Drummer's Call shall be beat by the drummers of the police a quarter of an hour before the time of beating, when the drummers will assemble before the colors of the respective regiments; and as soon as the beat begins on the right, it will be immediately taken up by the whole army, the drummers beating along the front of their respective regiments, from the centre to the right, thence to the left, and back again to the centre, where they finish. Where the hours for the different beats and signals are not fixed, the commanding officer will establish them, having regard to climate and circumstances.

**Guard Mounting.**

Thirty minutes before guard mounting, a call will be sounded for the men warned for duty, to turn out on their company parades for inspection by the first sergeants, superintended by an officer of each company. Ten minutes after, a second call will be sounded for the duty men to repair to the regimental or garrison parade, conducted by the first sergeants. Each detachment, as it arrives, will take post on the left of the one that preceded it, under the direction of the adjutant, in open order, arms shouldered, and bayonets fixed; the supernumeraries, five paces in the rear of the men of their respective companies. If the guards are intended for the grand parade, they will be marched thither by the senior officer of the details, where they will take post in the order prescribed above, under the direction of the general staff officer, or his assistant, the adjutant of the day.

The following regulations respecting mounting guards, are drawn up with reference to the grand parade; with a few obvious variations, they will equally apply to regimental or garrison parades.

The ranks being opened, the officers of the guards will take post twelve paces in front of the centre, in one line, according to rank, and with swords drawn; the sergeants in one rank, four paces in the rear of the officers, and the corporals in one rank, four paces in the rear of the sergeants; the whole facing to the front.

The adjutant of the day will dress the lines, count the files, verify the details by reference to the written orders, and tell off the guards, whilst the general staff officer appoints the officers and non-commis-
sioned officers to the several guards, and designates the posts which they are to occupy.

The staff officer will then command,

1. Officers and non-commissioned officers. 2. About — Face. 3. Inspect your Guards — March!

The commander of each guard then commands,

1. Order Arms. 2. Inspection of Arms.

The two highest in rank, of each guard, will divide the ranks between them, accompanied by the other officers, and inspect accordingly. During the inspection the band will play.

The inspection ended, the officers and non-commissioned officers will take post in their respective guards, as though each guard were a company of a battalion, in open order, under review, at which time, also, the officers of the day will take post in front of the centre of the guards; the old officer of the day on the right of the new officer of the day, one pace retired.

The staff officer will now command,

1. Rest. 2. Troop — Beat off!

When the music, beginning on the right, will beat down the line in front of the officers of the guards to the left, and back to its place on the right, where it will cease to play.

The staff officer continues:


4. Present — Arms!

At which he will face to the new officer of the day, salute and report, “The guards are formed.” The new officer of the day, after acknowledging the salute, will give the necessary instructions to the staff officer, who will cause the same to be executed, the staff officer giving the word of command.

The guard, having shouldered arms, and performed such exercises as may be required by the officer of the day, the staff officer will again command.


When the whole will march past the officer of the day, according to the order of review, conducted by the staff officer, marching on the left of the first division; the adjutant of the day on the left of the last division.

When the column has passed the officer of the day, the guards
will break off under their respective commanders, and take the route to the several posts assigned them, the staff officers breaking off at the same time; the music will cease, and the old officer of the day salute, and give the old or standing orders to the new officer of the day. The supernumeraries at the same time will be marched by the first sergeants, to their respective company parades, and dismissed.

Guards which are assigned to new posts, will be conducted to and established in them, by the officer of the day, and the staff officer, detached from head quarters for the purpose.

In bad weather, the ceremony of turning off guards on the usual parades, may be dispensed with by the officer of the day, and the inspection be made under shelter. Also in case of guards which may have to mount in the night, or at the close of the day. After fatiguing marches, the ceremony of turning off may be dispensed with, but never that of inspection.

The officer of the day will always be present at guard mounting. No other officer, except a general officer, will interfere with, or give any order, on the parade, to the staff officer on duty there. The commander of the troops or garrison, though under the rank of general, is of course an exception to this rule.

The regiment that furnishes the adjutant of the day, will also furnish the music for the grand parade.

Officers on all duties under arms, are to have their swords drawn, without waiting for any words of command for that purpose.

RELIEVING GUARDS AND SENTINELS.

The guards in camp and garrison, will be relieved every twenty-four hours. The guards at the outposts will ordinarily be relieved in the same manner, but this must depend on their distances from camp, or other circumstances, which may sometimes require their continuing on duty for several days. In such cases they must be previously notified to provide themselves accordingly.

The guards are to move in the greatest order to their respective posts, marching by platoons, where the roads will admit.

The officer of the old guard, having his guard paraded, on the approach of the new guard, commands

\textit{Present — Arms!}

The new guard will march past the old guard, at \textit{Shoulder arms},
officers saluting, and take post three or four paces on its right, and in a line with it, when its officer will command

Present — Arms!

The two officers will then approach each other, and the relieving officer take his orders from the relieved. Both officers will then return to their respective guards, and command

Shoulder — Arms!

The officer of the new guard will now direct his sergeant to make a list of the guard, dividing them into three reliefs, and proceed himself to take possession of the guard-house or guard-tent, and the articles and prisoners in charge of the guard, and will note every new injury which may have been committed, and, on his report, the relieved officer will be held responsible.

The officer of the old guard will have to prepare, for the signature of the officer who relieves him, an inventory of the property or articles in charge of the guard; also a roll of the prisoners, with their offences annexed.

The first relief having been designated, the officer of the new guard will order it two paces to the front, when the corporal of the new guard will take charge of it, and go to relieve the sentinels, accompanied by the corporal of the old guard, who will take command of the old sentinels, when the whole are relieved.

If the sentinels are numerous, the sergeants are to be employed as well as corporals, in relieving them.

During the time of relieving the sentinels, and of calling in the small posts, the commanders of the two guards will, when near the enemy, visit the avenues leading to the post; the old commander giving to the new all the information which he may possess relative to the position of the enemy.

A relief, with arms supported and formed in two ranks, will march by a flank, conducted by the corporal, on the side of the leading front rank man.

The sentinels at the guard-house or guard-tent, will be the first relieved and left behind; the one most distant will be the next relieved, and the others in succession, as the relief returns to the guard.

When a sentinel sees the relief approaching, he will face to it and halt. At six paces the corporal will command
APPENDIX.

Relief — Halt!

When the relief will halt and carry arms. The corporal will then add, "No. 1," "No. 2," or "No. 3," according to the designation of the sentinel.

Arms — Port!

At this word, the two sentinels will arms port, and approach each other, when the old sentinel, under the direction of the corporal, and in his hearing, will whisper the instructions to the new sentinel.

This done, the two sentinels will shoulder arms, and the old sentinel will pass in quick time to his place in rear of the relief, the new sentinel facing the relief. The corporal will then command,

1. Relief, Support — Arms. 2. Forward — March!

And the relief proceeds in the same manner, until the whole are relieved.

A relief is always to be marched in the greatest order at support arms; and if an officer approaches, the corporal is to order his men to carry arms! supporting them again when the officer has passed. The corporals are to be answerable that the sentinels, when relieving, perform their motions in the greatest spirit and exactness.

The detachments and sentinels from the old guard having rejoined it, it will take up its march, the music of both guards beating a march, except at the outposts, where music is prohibited. The old guard will march along the front of the new guard, with shouldered arms, the new guard at present arms, officers of both guards saluting.

On arriving at the camp or post, the commander of the old guard, will, if it consists of detachments of different regiments, send each detachment to its own regiment, under an officer or non-commissioned officer, unless the officer of the day should be present to inspect the old guard, when he will order the men to their several regiments, under their respective officers. In either case, the pieces of the men will be drawn, or discharged at a target, before the men are dismissed.

When the old guard has marched off fifty paces, the officer of the new guard will order his guard to face to the right, and cause them to stack their arms, or to place them in the arm-racks.

The commanding officer of the guard will then make himself acquainted with the written, general, and particular instructions of his post; next visit his sentinels, to ascertain if the instructions they have received be correct; and question the officers and non-commissioned
officers under him relative to the instructions they may respectively have received from the corresponding persons of the old guard.

**METHOD OF GOING AND RECEIVING THE GRAND ROUNDS.**

The general and other officers of the day will visit the several guards during the day, as often and at such hours as they judge proper.

When the sentry before the guard perceives the officer of the day approach, he will call to the guard to turn out, when it will parade, and at the proper time salute him with presented arms.

The officer of the day will examine the guard; see that none are absent; that their arms and accoutrements are in good order; that the officers and non-commissioned officers are acquainted with their duty; and that the sentinels are properly posted and have received proper orders.

The officer of the guard shall give the parole to the officer of the day, if demanded.

The officer of the day will go the grand rounds after twelve o'clock at night.

When the officer of the day arrives at the guard whence he intends to begin his rounds, he will make himself known as such, by giving the officer of the guard the parole. He will then order the guard under arms, and having examined it, demand an escort of a sergeant and two men to proceed to the next post.

When the rounds are challenged by a sentinel, the sergeant will answer, *grand rounds*, and the sentinel will reply, *stand, grand rounds! advance sergeant with the countersign.* The sentinel will then cry, *advance, rounds! and present arms till they have passed.*

When the sentinel before the guard challenges, and is answered, *grand rounds;* he will reply, *stand, grand rounds! turn out the guard, grand rounds!* upon which the guard will be turned out, and drawn up in good order, with shouldered arms, the officers taking their posts. The officer commanding the guard will then order a sergeant and two men to advance towards the rounds and challenge. When the sergeant comes within ten paces of the rounds, he will halt and challenge briskly. The sergeant of the rounds is to answer, *grand rounds.* The sergeant of the guard replies, *stand, grand rounds! advance, sergeant, with the countersign!* and orders his men to present arms. The sergeant of the rounds advances alone,
and giving the countersign, returns to his rounds; and the sergeant of the guard calls to his officer, the **countersign is right**, on which the officer of the guard calls, **advance, rounds!** The officer of the rounds then advances alone, and on his approach the guard presents arms. The officer of the rounds passes along the front of the guard immediately to the officer, who keeps his post on the right, and gives him the parole. He then examines the guard, orders back his escort, and demands a new one, and proceeds in the same manner to other guards.

All general officers, as well as the commander of the post or garrison, may visit the guards and go the grand rounds, and be received in the same manner as prescribed for the officer of the day.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parole.</th>
<th>ARTICLES IN CHARGE.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Countersign.</td>
<td>Lieutenants</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Detail.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>LIST OF THE GUARD.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>RELIEFS AND WHEN POSTED.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1st Relief from 10 to 12, and 4 to 6.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>LIST OF PRISONERS.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Names</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

A. B., Lieut. of — Reg’t of — Commanding the Guard.
GENERAL REGULATIONS FOR THE ARMY.

TROOPS IN CAMPAIGN.

As the troops arrive at the appointed rendezvous, the general-in-chief will cause them to be organized into brigades and divisions, and if necessary, into army corps.

The cavalry and infantry will be brigaded separately.

Ordinarily, two regiments will constitute a brigade, and two brigades a division; but this arrangement may be varied by the general-in-chief, whenever he shall judge it proper.

As soon as the organization of the brigades, divisions, and army corps is completed, they will be numbered according to the rank of the generals appointed to command them respectively, which will determine the rank of each corps in the order of battle.

ORDER OF ENCAMPMENT.

Cavalry.

The cavalry will encamp by squadrons, each squadron occupying the same front that it does when drawn up in the order of battle, with the same intervals being preserved between the squadrons.

Two* companies constitute a squadron. Each company of a squadron pitches its tents in one row, perpendicularly to the front, facing inwards. The horses of each company are picketed in a line, parallel to the tents, with their heads towards them. Each horse so picketed, will require about five feet; the depth of the row will depend upon the number of horses in company. The tents will be pitched at equal distances from each other, so as to allow space between them respectively, for the forage of the horses belonging to the men of the respective tents. The tents of the sergeants will always be pitched at the head of the row, and on the line of encampment. The distance between the sergeants' tent and the adjacent tent, will be double the distance between the other tents, so as to allow for the forage for the sergeants' horses, and those of the men in the next tent, and thus rendering it unnecessary to place the forage of the last tent in the row, on the side of the kitchens, where it might be exposed to fire.

Each company of sixty mounted dragoons, will occupy a front of ninety feet, which will be divided as follows:

* A squadron consists of not less than two, and will not admit of more than four troops; four troops is a full squadron. — Ed.
For pitching a horseman's tent, 9 feet.
From front pole of tents to pickets, 12 "
From pickets to the edge of the array, 18 "
Breadth of the array, 6 "

A squadron of two companies will occupy a front of 180 feet, so that there will be between the array of each company, a street of 90 feet.

If a company encamp by itself, it will observe the same rule, except that it will be formed in two rows of tents, instead of one.

If there be an odd company in a squadron, or with the regiment, it will encamp in the same manner, as directed for the other companies of the squadron; that is, in one row, and facing towards the company next to it, whether it be on the right or left, preserving a distance equal to its front when in line.

The horses of the rear rank, are always to be picketed next to their file leaders.
The horses of company officers are to be picketed in a line with the company officers, on the flank towards the officers' tents.
The non-commissioned staff will encamp in a line with the field and staff.
The horses of the field and staff are to be picketed in the rear of their respective tents.
The remainder of the encampment, including guards, baggage, sutlers, kitchens, batmen, and sinks, will conform to that of the infantry.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Camp Guard</th>
<th>Men's Sinks</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Parade</td>
<td>Ground</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Front line of</td>
<td>Company Tents</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Company</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Company</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Field staff and non-commissioned officers</td>
<td>Kitchens</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Officers</td>
<td>Officers</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Sutlers</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Batmen's</td>
<td>Tents</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Horses and</td>
<td>Waggons</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Officers Sinks</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Quarter</td>
<td>Guard</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Working Parties.

Soldiers have been, and are at all times, liable to be ordered on working parties as a duty.

When it is necessary to employ them as artificers or laborers, in the construction of permanent military works and roads, they are to receive, in addition to their pay, the allowances made by law or regulation.

These allowances do not apply to men belonging to the ordnance department, or to artificers belonging to the artillery, who are mustered and paid as such.

In summer, the hours for actual labor are ten; in winter eight; and the soldiers will be paid in proportion for any greater or less number of hours they may be employed in each day. The summer period is considered to commence on the first of April, and the winter period on the first of October in each year.

It is however, to be distinctly understood, that except for performance of certain duties, in cases that may appear to the general, or other officer commanding, to be deserving of particular consideration, under the provisions of the law, no such extra pay shall be extended to or claimed by working parties in camp, or on service, when work becomes the most important of duties, when the bodily exertion of every individual of every rank is required to facilitate the operations, strengthen the positions, and ensure the general safety of the army, and when the use of the spade, pickaxe, and barrow, are as essential for the defence, as that of the musket and bayonet are for the offensive operations of the army.

It is likewise to be understood, that officers commanding military posts, are not to create any expense under this head, without authority from general head quarters, or from the war department.

The levelling of ground in the vicinity of the camp or barracks, and the making of communications between different parts of them are duties of fatigue, and are to be performed without any additional pay.

When working parties are furnished for opening roads, throwing up fortifications, etc., the officers commanding them are to execute the work, conformably to the directions and plans of the engineer or other officers having charge of the same, without reference to their respective ranks.
GENERAL REGULATIONS FOR THE ARMY.

Troops when not in the field, are not to be employed in any work not strictly military, which can be done by hire, or by contract with individuals not belonging to the army, unless by special authority of the war department.

ALLOWANCE OF CAMP AND GARRISON EQUIPAGE.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>GRADES</th>
<th>Marquises</th>
<th>Wall Tents</th>
<th>Canvas Tents</th>
<th>Spades</th>
<th>Axes</th>
<th>Hatchets</th>
<th>Camp Kettles</th>
<th>Mess Pans</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>General officers each</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Colonels, Lieutenant Colonels, Majors, Surgeons, and staff officers</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>having rank assimilated to these grades, each</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Captains, Assistant Surgeons, Assistant Quartermasters, Assistant</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Commissaries, Aides-de-Camp, and military store keepers, each</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Subalterns to every two</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>6</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>To each company</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>To every six non-commissioned officers, musicians, and privates,</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td></td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>including the authorized number of washer-women and servants.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

In lieu of kettles, iron pots may be furnished to troops in garrison.

BREVET PAY.

Officers who have brevet commissions, shall be entitled to receive their brevet pay and emoluments, when on duty, under the following circumstances.

A brevet captain, when commanding a company.

A brevet major, when commanding two companies, or when acting as major of the regiment.

A brevet lieutenant colonel, when commanding at least four companies, or when acting as lieutenant colonel of the regiment.

A brevet colonel, when commanding nine companies of artillery, or ten of infantry, or dragoons, or a mixed corps of ten companies, or when commanding a regiment.

A brevet brigadier general, when commanding a brigade of not less than two regiments, or twenty companies.

A brevet major general, when commanding a division of four regiments, or at least forty companies.
A brevet officer, when assigned by the special order of the secretary of war, to a particular duty and command, according to his brevet rank, although such command be not in the line; provided his brevet allowances are recognized in the order of assignment.

To entitle officers to brevet allowances, while acting as field officers of regiments, according to their brevets, they must be recognized at general head quarters as being on such duty, and the fact announced accordingly in general orders.

Officers entitled to double rations, to brevet pay, and emoluments, or to ten dollars a month for commanding companies, will not forfeit such allowances when temporarily absent from their stations and commands, provided the absence does not exceed one month, or thirty days.

No officer shall receive pay for two staff appointments at the same time.
Table of Pay, Subsistence, &c., allowed to Officers and Soldiers.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>GRADE</th>
<th>Pay.</th>
<th>Subsistence</th>
<th>Forage.</th>
<th>Servants.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Major General</td>
<td>200.00</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Aide-de-camp to Major General, in addition to his pay in the line,</td>
<td>24.00</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Brigadier General,</td>
<td>104.00</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Aide-de-camp to Brigadier General, in addition to his pay in the line,</td>
<td>20.00</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Adjutant General</td>
<td>90.00</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Inspector General,</td>
<td>90.00</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Quarter Master General</td>
<td>104.00</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Quarter Master</td>
<td>60.00</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Assistant Quarter Master, in addition to pay in the line,</td>
<td>20.00</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Paymaster</td>
<td>50.00</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Commissary General of Purchases, $3,600 per annum.</td>
<td>90.00</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Commissary General of Subsistence,</td>
<td>60.00</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Commissary of Subsistence, in addition to pay in the line,</td>
<td>20.00</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Assistant Commissary of Subsistence, in addition to pay in the line,</td>
<td>10 to 20</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Store Keeper, not to exceed pay, &amp;c. of Captain of Infantry.</td>
<td>60.00</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Topographical Engineer,</td>
<td>40.00</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Assistant Topographical Engineer,</td>
<td>2,500</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Surgeon General, $2,500 per annum.</td>
<td>50.00</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Surgeon of ten years' standing,</td>
<td>50.00</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Surgeon under ten years' standing,</td>
<td>50.00</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Assistant Surgeon of ten years' standing,</td>
<td>40.00</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Assistant Surgeon of five years' standing,</td>
<td>40.00</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Assistant Surgeon under five years' standing</td>
<td>50.00</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Table of Pay and Subsistence, allowed to Officers and Soldiers.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>GRADE</th>
<th>Pay Per month</th>
<th>No. of Rations per day</th>
<th>No. of Horses allowed</th>
<th>No. allowed</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Colonel,</td>
<td>75.00</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lieutenant Colonel,</td>
<td>60.00</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Major,</td>
<td>50.00</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Adjutant, in addition to pay in the line,</td>
<td>10.00</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Captain,</td>
<td>40.00</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1st Lieutenant,</td>
<td>30.00</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2d Lieutenant,</td>
<td>25.00</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cadet,</td>
<td>16.00</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sergeant Major,</td>
<td>16.00</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Quartermaster Sergeant,</td>
<td>16.00</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Principal Musician of Infantry,</td>
<td>16.00</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>First Sergeant,</td>
<td>15.00</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ordnance Sergeant, in addition to pay in the line,</td>
<td>5.00</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sergeant,</td>
<td>12.00</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Corporal,</td>
<td>8.00</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Artificer of Artillery,</td>
<td>10.00</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Musician,</td>
<td>6.00</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Private,</td>
<td>6.00</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Armorer of Ordnance,</td>
<td>16.00</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Blacksmith do.</td>
<td>16.00</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Carriage Master do.</td>
<td>16.00</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Artificer do.</td>
<td>13.00</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Laborer do.</td>
<td>9.00</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Table of Pay and Subsistence allowed to Dragoons.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>GRADE</th>
<th>Pay Per month</th>
<th>Rations per day</th>
<th>Horses</th>
<th>Servants</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Colonel,</td>
<td>90.00</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lieutenant Colonel,</td>
<td>75.00</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Major,</td>
<td>60.00</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Captain,</td>
<td>50.00</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lieutenant, (1st and 2d,)</td>
<td>33 33 3 3</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Adjutant, in addition to pay in the line,</td>
<td>10 00 0</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sergeant Major,</td>
<td>16</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Quartermaster Sergeant,</td>
<td>16</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chief Bugler,</td>
<td>16</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>First Sergeant,</td>
<td>15</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sergeants,</td>
<td>12</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Corporal,</td>
<td>10</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Farrier and Blacksmith,</td>
<td>10</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bugler,</td>
<td>9</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Private,</td>
<td>8</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cornet,</td>
<td>26 66 3 3</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sword Master,</td>
<td>26 66 3 3</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Riding Master,</td>
<td>26 66 3 3</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Ranks not mentioned in the Army Regulation. These are taken from Matby on Courts Martial, p. 273.
FLAGS.

GARRISON FLAG.

The garrison flag is the national flag; it is to be made of bunting, not to exceed forty feet fly, and twenty feet hoist; to be composed of thirteen horizontal stripes of equal breadth, alternately red and white, beginning with red. In the upper quarter, near the staff, will be the Union, composed of a number of white stars, equal to the number of states, distributed over a blue field, one third the length of the flag, and to run down to the lower edge of the fourth red stripe.

CAMP COLORS.

The camp colors are to be of bunting, eighteen inches square, white for infantry, and red for artillery, with the number of the regiment on them. The pole eight feet long.

STANDARDS AND GUIDONS OF THE CAVALRY.

Each regiment will have a silken standard, and each company a silken guidon. The standard to bear the arms of the United States, embroidered in silk, on a blue ground, with the number and name of the regiment, in a scroll underneath the eagle. The flag of the standard to be two feet five inches wide, and two feet three inches on the lance, and to be edged with yellow silk fringe.

The flag of the guidon to be made swallow-tailed, three feet five inches from the lance to the end of the slit of the swallow-tail; fifteen inches to the fork of the swallow-tail, and two feet three inches on the lance. To be half red, and half white, dividing at the fork, the red above; on the red the letters U. S. in white, and on the white the letter of the company, in red. The lance of the standards and guidons to be nine feet long, including spear and ferule.
### ORD NANCE STATIONS.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Names of Ordnance Stations</th>
<th>Post Offices</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Ordnance Office</td>
<td>Washington City, D. C.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Springfield Armory</td>
<td>Springfield, Massachusetts.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Harper's Ferry Armory</td>
<td>Harper's Ferry, Virginia.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kennebec Arsenal</td>
<td>Augusta, Maine.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Watertown Arsenal</td>
<td>Watertown, Massachusetts.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fort Monroe Arsenal</td>
<td>Fort Monroe, Virginia.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Champlain Arsenal</td>
<td>Vergennes, Vermont.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Watervliet Arsenal</td>
<td>Watervliet, New York.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rome Arsenal</td>
<td>Rome, New York.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Alleghany Arsenal</td>
<td>Pittsburg, Pennsylvania.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Frankfort Arsenal</td>
<td>Frankfort, Pennsylvania.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pittsville Arsenal</td>
<td>Pittsville, Maryland.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Washington Arsenal</td>
<td>Washington, D. C.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bellomy Arsenal</td>
<td>Richmond, Virginia.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Augusta Arsenal</td>
<td>Augusta, Georgia.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mount Vernon Arsenal</td>
<td>Mt. Vernon, Ala. (via. Mobile.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Appalachicola Arsenal</td>
<td>Chattahoochee, Florida.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Baton Rouge Arsenal</td>
<td>Baton Rouge, Louisiana.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>St. Louis Arsenal</td>
<td>St. Louis, Missouri.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Detroit Arsenal</td>
<td>Detroit, Michigan Territory.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Charleston Depot</td>
<td>Charleston, South Carolina.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### UNIFORM, OR DRESS OF THE DRAGOONS.

**Coat** — Dark blue cloth, double breasted, two rows of buttons, ten in each row, at equal distances, after the fashion of the coat described for the infantry, except that the buttons are to be gilt, the lace gold, the collar, cuffs, and turnbacks, yellow, the skirt to be ornamented with a star, instead of a bugle, and the length of the skirt to be what is called three quarters, the slash flap on the skirt and sleeve to correspond with that of the infantry; the slash on the sleeve to designate rank in the same manner, the collar to be framed with lace, two loops on each side of the collar, with small uniform buttons at the back end of the loops.

**Button** — Gilt, convex; device, a spread eagle, with the letter D on the shield.

**Trousers** — For the company officers, blue, grey mixture, of the same color as that for the infantry, with two stripes of yellow cloth, three-fourths of an inch wide, up each outward seam, leaving a light between.

Field officers, dark blue cloth, with two stripes of gold lace up
each outward seam, three-fourths of an inch wide, leaving a light between. For summer, all officers to wear plain white drilling.

_Cap_—Of the same material as that for the infantry, but according to a pattern furnished, to be ornamented with a gilt star, silver eagle, and gold cord; the star to be worn in front, with a drooping white horsehair pompon; the field officers to have a small strip of red horse hair, to show in front of their pompons.

_Aiguillette_—Of twist gold cord, with gilt tags, to be worn under the epaulette of the right shoulder, will distinguish the field officers and commissioned staff.

_Boots_—Ankle.

_Spurs_—Yellow metal.

_Sabre_—Steel scabbard, half basket hilt, gilt, with two fluted bars on the outside, fish skin gripe, bound with silver wire, and of the pattern deposited with the ordnance department.

_Knot_—Gold cord, with acorn end.

_Sash_—Silk net, deep orange color, and like that of the infantry, as to shape and size; to be tied on the right hip; to be worn only when in full dress, or when ordered by the commanding officer.

_Waist Belt_—Black patent leather, one and a half inch wide, with slings, hooks, and plate, like those of the general staff; omitting on the plate the letters U. S., and inserting the letter D within the wreath.

_Stock_—Black silk.

_Gloves_—White.

Undress.

_Coat_—Dark blue cloth, cut after the fashion of citizen's coat, with nine buttons on each breast, one on each side of the collar, four on the cuffs, four along the flaps, two on the hips, one on the bottom of each skirt, and two, one and a half inches apart, about midway of each skirt.

_Epaulette strap_, on each shoulder.

This coat will habitually be worn, when not in full dress, and may be worn (with or without epaulettes, according to orders,) upon all duty done by detail, where the officer is not required to be in full uniform; and upon all drills, where the troops are not in full dress. Officers upon ordinary stable duty, marches, or active service, will be permitted to wear a shell, or stable jacket, corresponding with that of the men.
Great Coat — Blue grey mixture, like that furnished the men; double breasted, with sleeves, stand up collar, cape to meet, and button all the way in front, and reach down to the upper edge of the cuff of the coat.

Trousers — Same as full dress, with the exception of the stripes.

Forage Cap — Black leather, same as those furnished to the men.

Horse Furniture.

Housing — Blue cloth, with gold lace border, for the field officers and commissioned staff, one and a half inches wide; and yellow cloth border of the same width, for company officers.

Bridle — Black leather.

Mountings — All metallic mountings, stirrups, bits, &c., of saddle and bridle, to be of yellow metal.

Non-commissioned Officers, Buglers, and Privates of Dragoons.

Coat — Dark blue cloth short coat, double breasted, with yellow collar and cuffs, turnbacks, and brass shoulder knots, of the exact cut and fashion of the one furnished the clothing bureau. Sergeants to wear chevrons of three bars, points towards the cuff, on each sleeve, above the elbow; corporals, two bars. The collar of the chief musicians and sergeants' coats, to be trimmed with yellow worsted binding, after the style of the officers. Musicians' coats to be of red cloth, yellow turnbacks and cuffs.

Trousers — White and light blue mixture cloth, producing the effect of sky blue, cut and made after the style and fashion of a pair furnished the clothing bureau. Sergeant to have two yellow stripes, three-fourths of an inch wide, up each outward seam, leaving a light between. Corporals and privates, one yellow stripe up each outward seam. The stripes to be in advance of the seam.

Jacket — Blue cloth for winter, white cotton for summer; stand up collar, trimmed with yellow worsted binding, like sergeants' coat; single breasted, one row of buttons in front. These jackets to be made of cloth, of the quality used for the old uniform coats.

Cap — Black beaver, seven and a half inches crown; the pattern, ornaments, and trimming, like the one furnished the clothing bureau. Drooping white horsehair pompon.

Great Coat — Grey cloth, double breasted, yellow buttons, stand
up collar. The cape to reach down to the cuff of the coat, and to button all the way up.

Boots — Ankle.

The non-commissioned staff to wear aiguillettes on the left shoulder, like those for the artillery. Non-commissioned staff, and first sergeants of companies, wear yellow worsted sashes.

Forage Caps — Black leather, like pattern furnished clothing bureau.

Epaulettes.

A Major General, commanding in chief — Gold, with solid crescent; device, three silver embroidered stars; one, one and a half inches in diameter; one, one and a quarter inches; and one, one and an eighth inches, placed on the strap, in a row longitudinally and equidistant. Dead and bright gold bullion.

All other Major Generals — The same as the commander in chief, except there shall be two stars on the strap, instead of three.

A Brigadier General — The same as a major general, except there shall be one star on the strap.

Of a Colonel — Bright bullion, half an inch diameter, three inches and a half long; plain lace strap, ornamented with an embroidered spread eagle; the number of the regiment to be embroidered within the crescent; crescent solid; eagle and number to be silver where the bullion is gold, and gold where the bullion is silver.

Of a Lieutenant Colonel — The same as the colonel, omitting the eagle.

Of a Major — The same as a lieutenant colonel, as to shape and size; the strap to be of silver lace, where the bullion is gold; and of gold lace, where the bullion is silver; the number on the strap to correspond in color with the bullion; the border of the strap the same color as the bullion.

Of a Captain — Plain lace straps, and solid crescent bullion, one fourth in diameter, and two and a half inches deep; regimental number on the strap to be gold embroidered, where the bullion is silver; and to be silver embroidered, where the bullion is gold.

Of a Lieutenant — The same as for a captain, except that the bullion is one eighth inch in diameter.

The bullion of all epaulettes to correspond in color with the button of the coat.
All officers having military rank, to wear one epaulette on each shoulder.

The number on the epaulette being intended to denote the regiment, it will be worn by regimental officers only.

Epaulettes may be worn either with pads or boxes.

ALLOWANCES TO OFFICERS FOR THE TRANSPORTATION OF THEIR BAGGAGE, WHEN ORDERED TO A DISTANCE.

To a major general, at $2 per 100 miles, ... 1250 lbs.
To a brigadier general, adjutant general, inspector general,
    or quartermaster general, ... 1000 "
To a colonel, ... 750 "
To a hospital surgeon, ... 750 "
To a lieutenant colonel, ... 600 "
To a major, ... 500 "
To a captain, ... 400 "
To a surgeon, ... 400 "
To a sableman, ... 300 "
To a surgeon's mate, ... 300 "
To a cadet, ... 200 "

Furloughs to Soldiers.

By the twelfth article of war, (Furloughs are granted p. 422,) "If a soldier fail to rejoin his regiment on the expiration of his furlough, and no satisfactory account be given as to the cause of his continuing absent, he must be reported as a deserter, and proceeded against accordingly."

No furlough, however, will be given to enlisted men, without the sanction, by signature, of the commanding officer of the post, detachment, or regiment, (as the case may be;) and during a campaign, or any particular service, furloughs may be prohibited at the discretion of the officer in command.

FORM OF A FURLough.

To all whom it may concern:

The bearer hereof, a (sergeant, corporal, or private, as the case may be,) of Captain company regiment of aged years, feet inches high; complexion, eyes, hair, and by profession, a ; born in the of , and enlisted at in the of , on the day of eighteen
hundred and ___ to serve for the period of ___ is hereby permitted to go to ___ in the county of ___ state of ___ he having received a Furlough from the day of ___ to the day of ___ at ___ or wherever it then may be; or be considered a deserter.

Subsistence has been issued to said to the day of ___ and pay to the day of ___ both inclusive.

Given under my hand, at ___ this day of ___

Signature of the officer, giving the Furlough.

Discharges.

After a non-commissioned officer or soldier has been duly enlisted, he shall not be discharged, except as provided in the 11th article of war, (p. 421,) and all discharges shall be signed in the manner pointed out by said article.

Duplicate discharges are prohibited, as well as all certificates in lieu of discharges. All discharges will be accurately and legibly filled up, according to the established form.

Whenever a non-commissioned officer or soldier is about to be discharged, his captain shall furnish him with duplicate certificates of his enlistment, service, and the pay and allowances due him at the time; which certificates shall be made in conformity with the established form.

No discharge will be granted prior to the expiration of enlistment, except by order from general head quarters.

FORM OF DISCHARGE.

To all whom it may concern:

Know ye, that ___ of company (__) regiment of ___ who was enlisted the day of ___ one thousand eight hundred and ___ to serve ___ is hereby honorably discharged from the Army of the United States.

Said ___ was born in ___ in the State of ___ is years of age, feet inches high, complexion, eyes, hair and by occupation when enlisted a

Given at ___ this day of ___ 18

Signature of the officer giving the Discharge.

28
STRAW.

One truss of straw, weighing eighteen pounds, is allowed to every two men at the commencement of the month. At the expiration of fifteen days, each truss will be refreshed with four pounds; and at the expiration of the month, the whole straw will be removed and burnt, and a fresh bedding (one truss) furnished.

The same quantity of straw is allowed to servants and batmen, not soldiers; and for washerwomen in the proportion of one to every seventeen persons.

The allowance and change of straw for the sick in hospitals will be regulated by the senior attending surgeon.

At all posts in the vicinity of prairies belonging to the public, hay will be used in lieu of straw, and provided by the troops.  

Straw is not a personal allowance or emolument— it is furnished to secure the health and comfort of the soldiers, and is not, on any account, to be sold for their benefit; if not used by those for whom it is provided, as bedding, it is to be returned to the Quarter Master's Department.

FUEL AND QUARTERS.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Rooms.</th>
<th>Cords of Wood per month.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>As Quarterm. As Office. As Kitchen. From 1st May to 30th Sept. From 1st Oct. to 30th April.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>To a Major General, 5</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>To a Brigadier General, a Colonel, the Surgeon General, and Paymaster General—each, 4</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>To a Lieut. Colonel, Major, Paymaster, Surgeon—each, 3</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>To a Captain, an Assistant Surgeon, who has served five years, Store Keeper—each, 2</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>To all other Commissioned Officers—each, 1</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>To a Major General, or other officer commanding a Department, 2</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>To the Commanding Officer of a regiment or post, and to each Inspector General, Paymaster, Quarter-Master, and Assistant Quarter-Master; and to each acting Assistant Quarter-Master, if, in the opinion of the Quarter-Master General, the extent of his duty should warrant it, 1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>To every six non-commissioned officers, musicians, privates, and servants, including the authorized number of washerwomen, 1/2</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## GENERAL REGULATIONS FOR THE ARMY.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Amount for each Service</th>
<th>Infantry</th>
<th>Artillery</th>
<th>Ordnance</th>
<th>Dragoons</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>DC</td>
<td>53</td>
<td>43</td>
<td>39</td>
<td>59</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BC</td>
<td>46</td>
<td>44</td>
<td>44</td>
<td>44</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CC</td>
<td>44</td>
<td>44</td>
<td>44</td>
<td>44</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DC</td>
<td>55</td>
<td>53</td>
<td>51</td>
<td>55</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BC</td>
<td>33</td>
<td>31</td>
<td>31</td>
<td>33</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CC</td>
<td>44</td>
<td>44</td>
<td>44</td>
<td>44</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DC</td>
<td>56</td>
<td>56</td>
<td>56</td>
<td>56</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BC</td>
<td>66</td>
<td>66</td>
<td>66</td>
<td>66</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CC</td>
<td>77</td>
<td>77</td>
<td>77</td>
<td>77</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Allowance of Clothing for three years, for Privates.

- **Wool Jackets:**
  - Artillery and Infantry: 1
  - Dragoon and Ordnance: 1
- **Coats:**
  - Artillery and Infantry: 1
  - Dragoon and Ordnance: 1
- **Cape complete:**
  - First year: 9
  - Second year: 9
  - Third year: 9
  - Total: 27

### Distribution:

- **First year:** 5
- **Second year:** 5
- **Total:** 10
APPENDIX.

CLOTHING BUREAU.

The officer at the head of the clothing bureau is charged with the correspondence of the war department, upon all subjects connected with the clothing of the army, with the appropriations and requisitions. He receives all estimates for clothing and equipage, and prepares the annual estimates of those articles to be provided by the purchasing department; also, the detail estimates of issues.

Colonels, or commanders of regiments, will transmit to the clothing bureau, in each year, estimates of the clothing and equipage, which will be required for their respective commands, for the ensuing year, commencing with the month of November. The estimates from the regiments on the Upper Mississippi, Missouri, Red and Arkansas rivers, will be forwarded so as to be received by the first of February; all others by the first of May.

Special estimates are prohibited, except in cases of absolute necessity, which necessity will be clearly set forth in the estimate.

EXCHANGE, OR TRANSFER, OF REGIMENTAL OFFICERS.

1. The transfer of officers from one regiment to another, will be made only by the war department, and on mutual application of the parties desiring the exchange.

2. In no case will the officer of one regiment be put into another, where the transfer would prejudice the rank of any officer of either regiment.

3. The transfer of officers will be confined to regiments within their respective arms,—as cavalry, artillery, infantry.

4. When transfers are acceded to by the war department, they will be announced in orders.

TRANSFER OF SOLDIERS FROM ONE REGIMENT TO ANOTHER.

1. No non-commissioned officer or soldier will be transferred from one regiment to another, without the previous authority of the general-in-chief, which is to be obtained through the medium of the adjutant general, on a proper representation from the colonel or commanding officer of the regiment, of the circumstances under which the transfer is recommended.

2. When soldiers are authorized to be transferred from one regi-
ment to another, the transfer will take place on the first of a month, with a view to the more convenient settlement of their accounts.

3. In all cases of transfer, a complete descriptive roll will accompany the soldier transferred; which roll will embrace an account of his pay, clothing, and other allowances; also, all stoppages to be made on account of the government, and debts due the sutler and laundress, as well as such other facts as may be necessary to show his complete military history.
No. 2.

COURTS OF INQUIRY.

Military Courts of Inquiry are designed for the investigation of articles of charge, against persons subject to military law, with a view to ascertain the propriety of calling a court martial for the trial of the person accused. From this definition will appear the similarity between Courts of Inquiry, as regards the military department; and grand juries, as regards the civil.

Courts of Inquiry have no power of awarding sentence; therefore the examination cannot be considered as a trial. The Court merely make a statement of facts, unless there is an express order given to report their opinion.

The judge advocate and marshal will attend. A record is made of the proceedings by the judge-advocate, in the same manner as at courts martial; and the whole proceeding authenticated by the president and judge-advocate, and returned by the judge-advocate to the person appointing the Court of Inquiry.

Although the formalities incident to the court martial are to be observed at a Court of Inquiry, yet a Court of Inquiry cannot be called by every person who has the power to convene a court martial. It cannot be done in the army, unless by the particular direction of the president of the United States; or unless it be demanded by a person accused.

The said court shall consist of one or more officers, not exceeding three, and a judge-advocate, or other suitable person as a recorder, to reduce the proceedings and evidence to writing, all of whom shall be sworn to the faithful performance of their duty. This court shall have power to summon witnesses as a court martial, and to examine them on oath. The parties accused shall also be permitted to cross-examine, in interrogating the witnesses, so as to fully investigate the circumstances in question.
The judge advocate shall administer to the members the following oath:

"You shall well and truly examine and inquire, according to your evidence, into the matter now before you, without partiality, favor, affection, prejudice, or hope of reward, so help you God."

After which the president shall administer to the judge-advocate, or recorder, the following oath:

"You, A. B., do swear, that you will, according to your abilities, accurately and impartially record the proceedings of the court; and the evidence to be given in the case in hearing. So help you God."

The witnesses shall be sworn in the same manner as those before a court martial.
The object of courts martial.
Calling, assembling, and organizing courts martial.
A general court martial.
A regimental court martial.
Form of accusation.
General orders to convene a court.
Oath of members of the court.
Oath of judge-advocate.
Opening of the court.
Oath of witnesses.
Mode of taking the members' votes.
The youngest member votes first.
Persons eligible as members of courts martial.
Persons amenable to courts martial.
Of evidence.
Persons disqualified as witnesses at a court martial.
Of pleas.
Acquittal.
Of appeals.
Postponement.

Adjournment.
Of arrest.
Of the sentence of a court martial.
Of the marshal.
Execution of sentence.

Eight Classes of Sentences.
1. Sentence of Death.
2. " Cashiering.
3. " Dismissal from office.
4. " Suspension.
5. " Imprisonment.

Articles of War, Four Classes.
1. Respecting courts martial.
2. Of crimes.
3. Comprehending rights and duties of officers and others, belonging to the army.
4. Respecting courts of inquiry.

"The members of a court martial are not only jurymen, but judges."

THE OBJECT OF COURTS MARTIAL.

A court martial is a legally organized body, to investigate, deliberate, decide, adjudge, and award sentence, concerning offences committed against military law.

CALLING, ASSEMBLING, AND ORGANIZING COURTS MARTIAL.

A court martial is called and assembled by order of the commander-in-chief, or by any other military officer, to whom power is delegated, either by the commander-in-chief, or by statute.
ON COURTS MARTIAL.

The power of organization is vested in the members, whenever there shall be a sufficient number assembled to form a court.

There are two kinds of courts martial in the United States' service, which may be assembled,

I. General courts martial.

II. Regimental, or garrison courts martial.

1. A general court martial is ordered by the commander-in-chief, or the commandant of a particular section or division of the army; so that a colonel has, in some instances, the power of ordering a general court martial. These courts are always to consist of a number, not less than thirteen, where that number can be convened; and in no case shall the number be less than five.

2. Regimental courts martial are appointed by the colonel, or commandant of a corps, to consist of three commissioned officers only;* and solely for the trial of offences in his own regiment, not capital.

In actual service of the state, courts martial may be called, as in the United States' service; none other being allowed than general and regimental courts martial.

In either of the above cases, the officer who is authorized to order courts martial, issues an order, grounded on a complaint exhibited in due form, and by a suitable person.

The complaint, on which the order for assembling a court martial is issued, should be drawn up in proper form, specifying the charges. In whatever terms the accusation may be conceived, it is necessary,

1. That the crime or offence be clearly specified and expressed; and the act or acts of guilt pointedly charged.

2. The time and place, when and where the crime was committed, should be set forth with all possible precision. The following may be the form of complaint, or application for court martial.

To A. B., Commander in chief, &c.

The undersigned begs leave to complain to your excellency, of J. H. M., a captain of a company in the fourth regiment United States Infantry; for that the said J. H. M., on the fourth day of July last past, at , did beat, kick, abuse, and sorely wound one R.

* Voluntary corps, during peace, appoint the number to compose their courts, in accordance with their by-laws.

29
M., a soldier in his said company, and of which wounds he was a long time confined; all which was unbecoming an officer and a gentleman, and contrary to the eighty-third article of war. Wherefore your complainant prays your excellency, that the said J. H. M. may be arrested, and a court martial appointed for the trial of the said J. H. M., that he may be dealt with according to law, &c.

Dated, &c. 18

M. R.

[It has been the opinion of some persons, that the complainant should be a military officer or soldier. But it is admitted in the British service, to receive complaints from the citizens of the country; and in actual service it may not only be proper, but in certain cases necessary.]

The commander in chief, who issues the order for a court martial, names the person or officer who is to act as president of the court. It ought to be directed to the next in command, who will see that the orders are regularly passed down, and the officers detailed, of the rank required. The time and place, and the purpose, for which the court is to assemble, must be stated.

The adjutant general furnishes the president of the court, and the judge advocate, with a copy of the order and the charges. The following may be the form.

GENERAL ORDERS.

Head Quarters.

(Date, &c.)

A general court martial will be convened at on Monday, the day of , for the trial of J. H. M., captain of a company in the regiment United States Infantry, at ten o'clock, A. M., on a certain charge exhibited against him, alleged to be in violation of the eighty-third article of war; and on such other charges as may then and there be exhibited against him. Brigadier general J. W. is appointed president of said court. The members of the court will be detailed from the corps nearest the place of the court's sitting, according to law.

J. E., &c.

The judge advocate will furnish the accused with a copy of the charges, previous to the time of the sitting of the court, agreeably to law, that the accused may exactly know the nature and extent of the
charges exhibited against him, and have sufficient time to prepare for his defence.

The officers who may be ordered to make the detail, will each make return to the adjutant general, previous to the assembling of the court, naming the officer which he may have detailed for the service.

The members of the court having met at the time and place appointed, each member will make report to the judge advocate, giving him the date of his commission, and his office; so that the judge advocate may be able to form a roster of the court, according to rank, previous to the calling of the several members for the organization.

The judge advocate having his roster prepared, will call the names of the several members of the court, beginning with the president, and proceeding with the members successively, according to rank. The several members answer as they are called, and severally proceed to their places, on the right and left of the president; the first in rank on the right, and the next on the left of the president.

The judge advocate having ascertained the presence of all the members, proceeds to administer the oath to the president, in the form following, namely:

You, A. B., do swear, that without partiality, favor, affection, prejudice, or hope of reward, you will well and truly try and determine, according to evidence, the matter now before you, between the United States of America, and the person to be tried, and that you will duly administer justice, according to the best of your judgment. And you do further swear, that you will not divulge the sentence of this court martial, until it shall be approved or disapproved of; and that you will not, or any account, at any time whatever, discover the vote or opinion of any member, unless required to give evidence thereof as a witness, by a court of justice in due course of law. So help you God.

The members are severally sworn by the judge advocate in the same form. As soon as the said oath shall have been administered to the respective members, the president of the court shall administer to the judge advocate, or person officiating as such, an oath in the following words:

You, A. B., do swear, that you will faithfully and impartially
discharge your duties, as judge advocate, on this occasion, as well to
the as to the accused; and that you will not, on any account,
at any time whatever, divulge the vote or opinion of any member of
this court martial, unless required to give evidence thereof, as a wit-
ness, by a court of justice, in due course of law. So help you God.
The parties are called, and having answered in their places, the
president orders the marshal to open the court, which is to be done in
due form. It may be done in the following manner:
O yes, ——— O yes; ——— O yes. ——— All persons having any thing
to do before this honorable court martial here assembled, let them
draw near and give their attendance, and they shall be heard. God
save, &c.

After the court is completely organized and opened, the prisoner,
or accused, is called, and having answered to his name, (he will rise
at the same time,) the articles of accusation are read. The judge
advocate having completed the reading of the charges, calls on the
prisoner for his plea; —“Are you guilty, or not guilty, of the
matters of charge?” If the answer is Not guilty, the judge advocate
will inquire of him, “How will you be tried?” to which the prisoner
will reply, “By my God and my fellow soldiers.” The judge adva-
cate will then reply, “May God send you speedy deliverance.” The
court will then proceed with the trial.

It is frequently the practice in court martial trials, to exclude the
witnesses, and admit only one at a time. But this is for the determi-
nation of the court. When either party moves that it be adopted,
the court will direct them to withdraw to an adjoining apartment, and
wait the order of the court.

The following oath will be administered to each witness, by the
judge advocate.

“You swear, (or affirm, as the case may be,) that the evidence
you shall give in the case now in hearing, shall be the truth, the
whole truth, and nothing but the truth. So help you God.”

The judge advocate will call each witness in behalf of the prose-
cutor, who acts for the state; and as the witness relates the facts,
concerning the accusations, he takes minutes* of the evidence on

* The accused will be entitled to a desk, pens, ink, and paper, for his satis-
faction in making minutes.
ON COURTS MARTIAL.

the records of proceedings; preserving as near as possible, the words of the witness. The accused is then permitted to cross-examine the witness. The questions on both sides are through the judge advocate, and under the direction of the court; and such questions only as are relevant to the cause in hearing, are allowed; and the court will not suffer any other questions to be placed on the record. All questions, either by prosecutor or accused, ought to be handed in writing to the judge advocate, and inserted in the minutes of the proceedings. The court in the last place, put such questions to the witness as may be thought proper and necessary. This order of examination of witnesses should be adhered to, as a general rule. It will save time, and prevent confusion in the record, as the judge advocate keeps a correct record of all questions, answers, and evidence of the whole proceedings, in the manner they occur.

The witnesses on behalf of the government being produced, and the examination closed, the person on trial has a right to enter into his defence, by answering the prosecutor's address, (if one was made to the court,) "and may comment on the evidence, and enter into a detail of the exculpatory evidence he means to bring forward."

The parties having completed the presentation and examination of witnesses, the accused may claim of the court the privilege of summing up the testimony adduced, for his exculpation, and making such remarks as he may judge necessary for his defence. This is most commonly done in writing. If it is intended for the record, it must in all cases be done in writing. To this the prosecutor may reply.

If the accused is not prepared for his defence immediately on the close of the examination, the court will, on motion, adjourn a reasonable time for his accommodation.

Although the trial may be considered as closed when the reply of the prosecutor is finished, yet the court, on motion of either party, will permit further testimony; either as explanatory of former testimony, or in support of the credibility of witnesses.

The parties having finished their testimony, and submitted their observations for the consideration of the court, the spectators and parties will retire. The court will then-proceed to the consideration of the evidence adduced, to support the allegations of the prosecutor, and the defence of the accused. In this case, and in all deliberations, a court martial sits with closed doors. The judge advocate re-
mains with the court, and reads the whole testimony which has been
given in course of the trial. Members of the court, who have taken
minutes, will have an opportunity to compare and correct, if there be
any error in the minutes. When the subject has been fully discussed
and understood by every member, the judge advocate will then de-
mand of the several members, on each and every article of charge —
Is A. B., the person on trial, guilty or not guilty of the first (or
second, as the case may be) specification or article of charge against
him?

The answer is — "Guilty," — (or as the case may be) — "Not
guilty."

When the votes are called for on a question, the judge advocate
shall begin with the youngest in commission, and proceed regularly
to the eldest.

Provided a sufficient number pronounce the person on trial,
"Guilty," — the court will immediately pass to the consideration and
decision respecting the sentence. When the sentence is determined,
the whole proceedings are sealed up, authenticated by the president
and judge advocate, and immediately transmitted to the (war depart-
ment or the) person appointing the court martial.

If it appears by the votes of a court martial, that the accused is not
guilty, judgment of acquittal is inserted in the minutes; and the
whole proceedings are sealed up, attended with the same formalities
as when there is a judgment of "Guilty," and corresponding
sentence.

WHAT PERSONS ARE ELIGIBLE AS MEMBERS OF COURTS MARTIAL.

All officers, commissioned in the army, navy, or militia, may be
detailed on courts martial. No other persons are eligible. But all
of these are not eligible for every description of courts martial.
Officers of the army and navy cannot sit in court on those of the mi-
litia; nor officers of the militia on those of the army. But officers of
the navy may be united with those of the army on courts martial.

Those also who are eligible members for a general court martial,
are not for a regimental court martial. Those for a regimental, are
not eligible as members of a general court martial.

No officer under the rank of major can be detailed as member of a
general court martial.
At regimental courts martial, all commissioned officers of the regiment are eligible as members, excepting the commandant, or person appointing the court.

It may be made a question, whether those who belong to the staff department, and bear commissions, are to be detailed as members of courts martial. No solid objection is given why such persons should not be detailed.

If they be considered as belonging to the roster of officers, how are the details for the militia to avoid them? Because the law says, the "Officers ordered to be detailed to serve on courts martial shall be detailed from the rosters."

In the detail of the court, regard is to be paid to the rank of the person accused: and in all cases no member of inferior rank is to be detailed, if it can be avoided. No officer shall be tried but by a general court martial, nor by officers of inferior rank, if it can be avoided.

PERSONS NOT ELIGIBLE AS MEMBERS OF COURTS MARTIAL.

All persons liable to be detailed, or who may be eligible as members of courts martial, are not in all cases suitable persons. They may be excluded after being sworn, as improper persons, and disqualified for a particular case under consideration; or may, by a criminal action, or vicious life, become unfit for the duties.

A member, after having been sworn, may be challenged, either by the accused or the prosecutor.

"The privilege of challenging is mutual to the prisoner and to the prosecutor, for there may be sources of prejudice in favor of the prisoner, as well as against him; and urgent motives that may sway to acquit as well as to condemn."

A challenge in a military court cannot be peremptory, as in a civil court. The cause of challenge must be stated in writing, and the person challenged designated; when the court have the right to deliberate and decide as to the propriety of the objection against the sitting members.

And no challenge to more than one member at a time shall be received by the court.

And in no case shall a challenge be acted upon until the president and judge advocate, and the intended members, are sworn.
The causes of challenge may be reduced under the following heads:—

1. That the member has previously given an opinion respecting the case.
2. That he has been corrupted or bribed.
3. That there is reasonable ground of suspicion that he has formed prejudices.
4. That he has discovered malice or hostile enmity towards the challenger.
5. That he sustains an infamous character.
6. That he is under arrest, and charged with a similar crime.
7. That he had, formerly, set on a court of inquiry, in the same case.

When any of the foregoing are substantiated by testimony, the member must be considered as no longer suitable, and the seat ought to be vacated.

No court of honorable men would overrule such a challenge; nor can we conceive that an honorable man would wish to sit on a trial, while subject to any or either of these imputations.

PERSONS AMENABLE TO COURTS MARTIAL.

In the regular army, all the individuals of which it is composed, whether officers or soldiers, are amenable to courts martial; also all persons attached to the army, and all persons serving with, or doing business for the army.

All sutlers and retainers to the camp, and all persons whatsoever, serving with the army of the United States in the field, though not enlisted soldiers, are to be subject to orders, according to the rules and discipline of war.

In time of peace, there are no persons in the militia liable to courts martial but commissioned officers.

In time of war, or when in actual service, non-commissioned officers and privates are amenable to courts martial.

Officers who have left the service are liable for crimes committed during the time they were in service, provided a complaint is entered within two years of the commission of the crime. An officer of the militia, having been discharged, can only be punished by a disqualification; that is, by declaring him incapable of holding any office in future.
Soldiers having left the army, are liable to court martial, unless they have received a discharge in writing; and no discharge granted him shall be sufficient, which is not signed by a field officer of the regiment to which he belongs, or commanding officer, (where no field officer of the regiment is present.) No discharge shall be given to a non-commissioned officer or soldier before his term of service has expired, but by order of the president, the Secretary of War, the commanding officer of a department, or the sentence of a general court martial; nor shall a commissioned officer be discharged the service, but by order of the President of the United States, or by sentence of a general court martial.

An officer or soldier, having once belonged to the army, will be liable, unless discharged in one or other of these ways.

Officers are amenable for offences, although committed while under arrest or suspension. Neither arrest nor suspension will deprive the officer of his commission, nor annihilate his powers. It is only a temporary suspension of powers, and not a suspension of the obligations to perform duties. It may be asserted, without risking too much, that an officer under suspension, may be considered strictly amenable to martial law, for any trespass or transgression he shall commit. Suspension is a specific punishment for a specific crime; but it is a punishment which does not free a man from his military obligations. On the contrary, he is still considered as in the service; he holds his commission, and at the expiration of the term of suspension, becomes a perfect man again. If, therefore, during the continuation of this chastisement, he should attempt to go over to the enemy, to desert, or hold treasonable correspondence, he certainly is, in such cases, to be dealt with according to martial law. Neither reason, nor the practice of other nations, will justify the doctrine, that an officer, deprived of this exercise of his official powers, is also excused from his amenability to a military court, for offences committed during such suspension. Although the pay of an officer or a soldier may be suspended, and the emolument be withheld by government, yet it does not take away the military responsibility, though that part of the contract of the government which respects pay, seems not to be fulfilled. It must be recollected that the officer or soldier, when he enters into service, receives the promise of government for certain emoluments; yet the officer and soldier, on their
part also, are voluntarily bound to submit to discipline, and the rules
and regulations of the war articles. The deprivation therefore, does
not annul the obligation; it is not the fault of the government, but
the crime of the suspended person; and one crime cannot justify the
commission of another.

Persons on parole, having been captured by the enemy, are not
amenable to courts martial, until exchanged. A person captured
and paroled is still a prisoner, and only permitted to go at large. He
cannot be subject to military law; because he is under the control,
and subject to the call of the enemy. The prisoner thus at large in
his own country, has not been restored to his rights of citizenship.
He is not an elector or legislator.

Besides, it might be doing injustice, not only to the individual, but
the belligerent nation. It would be equally a violation of the laws of
nations, to try, condemn, and execute a man on parole, as to execute
the bearer of a flag of truce. So far is he from being considered as
liable to court martial, that he cannot be considered as belonging to
the country.

Another description of persons, not citizens of the United States,
may be subject to military law. These are such as may be appre-
hended as spies. It is to be understood, that a person cannot be
amenable to a court martial as a spy, unless he is a foreigner.

If a citizen of the United States be found lurking as a spy, around
a fortification or camp of the United States, he may be arrested for
treason, or a misdemeanor, and punished by the civil authority, ac-
cording to the aggravation of his crime. But this crime cannot con-
stitute any military offence, cognizable by court martial, unless he
belong to the army; and if he belong to the army, he cannot be
considered in the character of a spy.

No other person than those comprehended in these classes or
descriptions of people, are amenable to courts martial. Of course,
no private citizen, or person in civil life, is amenable.

OF EVIDENCE.

Whilst the character, the property, and lives of our fellow citizens
may depend on the decisions of courts martial, it is of the highest
importance that those who are to compose those courts should be
guided by correct and fixed rules, as to the admission of evidence.
The powers of a court martial are derived primarily from the statute, and can have no rules of evidence peculiar to itself. It is said to be a clear and indisputable principle of law, that whenever, by a legislative act, a new judicature is erected, without prescribing any particular rules of evidence for its government, the common law will supply its own rules, from which such new erected court cannot depart. Evidence is of two kinds.

1. Viva voce, or parol evidence, or such as is given by witnesses in court.

Parol testimony respecting papers in existence, (or such papers as would, if produced, be considered as written testimony,) cannot be admitted.

2. Written evidence, such as records, deeds, and other authentic papers.

Of this last there are two kinds, viz., public and private.

Public written evidence is such as may be derived from statutes, proceedings of legislatures, civil courts, military courts of inquiry, military records, orders, rosters, &c.

Authenticated copies of all such papers may be admitted as evidence; but copies of private papers cannot be admitted.

Private written evidence is such as may be derived from the parties individually; such as letters of correspondence, contracts, &c.

No evidence can be received against a prisoner, but in his presence; therefore, it is agreed that what a stranger has been heard to say, is, in strictness, no manner of evidence, either for or against the prisoner.

Verbal confessions, and what a prisoner has been heard to say at any time in conversation, or by observation, relative to the matter in issue, may be given against him; and therefore words, spoken at any time, may be given in evidence to support an overt act of high treason, though not treason in themselves. But confessions, or acknowledgment of facts, tending to criminate, are never to be received in evidence, if it appear that any promises of favor, or menace of punishment have been used to obtain them.

But though the declarations of a prisoner respecting facts, or which apply to the particular case charged, the intent making part of the charge, may be given against him, they cannot for him, except for the purpose of explaining or palliating the effect of such declaration.
What a witness hath been heard to say at another time, may be given in evidence, in order either to invalidate or confirm the testimony which he gives in court.

On the trials of cases not capital, before courts martial, the deposition of witnesses not in the line or staff of the army, may be taken before some justice of the peace, and read in evidence, provided the prosecutor and person accused are present at the taking of the same, or are duly notified thereof.

All persons shall be holden to appear and give evidence before any court martial, when thereunto summoned by the judge advocate or justice of the peace, under the same penalties for neglect as are by law provided against witnesses who neglect to appear when summoned to give evidence in a criminal prosecution.

The depositions of witnesses taken before a magistrate, on an examination concerning a misdemeanor, cannot be read in evidence on the trial of the party after the death of the deponent.

No witness is to be indulged in reading his testimony, from a paper previously prepared.

All witnesses are to be indulged the privilege of making explanations respecting the testimony they have given; but such explanation must be inserted in the minutes of the court martial by the judge advocate, and his original testimony must remain on the records entire. If a witness request to be indulged the liberty to withdraw his first testimony, and testify differently, his last testimony may be received; but he cannot be indulged with erasing his first testimony; because the commanding officer, who must finally approve or disapprove of the decision or sentence on the case, would not otherwise have an equal chance to decide as to the credibility of such testimony. The witness, however, will give his reasons for the alteration of his testimony, if he request it, which must also go on the record, for the consideration of the court and commanding officer.

Hearsay evidence as to facts is not admissible. There may be exceptions to this rule; as in prosecution for murder. When the deceased, while in the declared apprehension of death, or in such eminent danger of it as must necessarily have raised the apprehension in his mind, has made a relation of the manner in which the offence was committed.

Whenever a prisoner's confession is made use of against him, it is
but justice and reason, that his whole confession shall be taken

together, (and not by parcels,) so as to be evidence as well for as

against him.

A judge-advocate may also be sworn, to testify what he may have

known respecting the case before the commencement of the trial, or

what came to his knowledge as a private citizen.

PERSONS DISQUALIFIED AS WITNESSES AT A COURT MARTIAL.

All persons are to be excluded as incompetent, who may fall under

the following disabilities:

1. Those who have an interest in the event of the prosecution;

that is, expect to gain or lose, or have become a party in a similar

case pending.

2. Certain relations in society occasion incompetency as witnesses;

such as husband and wife.

3. Those who may have been convicted of crimes, such as per-

jury, forgery, &c., are to be excluded as incompetent witnesses.

4. Those persons who disbelieve the existence of a Supreme Be-

ing, and a future state of rewards and punishments, are excluded as

incompetent witnesses. Those persons are excluded as incompetent

witnesses, who have not sufficient intellects; such as idiots, insane

persons, and infants, who have not sufficient discernment to under-

stand the nature of an oath.

OF PLEAS.

In all trials before a court martial, it is necessary that the accused

should make a plea, or at least have the opportunity to plead, before

the court can proceed to the examination of witnesses.

These cases may be,

I. The general issue, or "Not guilty."

II. A plea in bar of trial, or

III. A plea to the jurisdiction of the court.

I. General issue.

The plea most commonly made use of in courts martial is that of

the general issue, or mere denial of the charge or charges alleged —

Not guilty.

Under this plea, all the facts will be permitted to be given in evi-

dence, and even in justification of the act or acts alleged.
APPENDIX.

This plea must be simple, and plain, and positive, and without any qualification.

General issues, it is said, were framed in words calculated to deny the whole of the facts alleged in the declaration, and proper, and in general necessary, when the defence merely denies the plaintiff's allegation, and refers the matter in dispute to the proper judges, whether or not the fact complained of was committed.

II. Plea in bar.

The accused having been arraigned before a court martial, may waive the plea of the "general issue," and give in his plea in bar of a trial. The first is given that the trial may proceed, the last to prevent a trial.

Pleas in bar are calculated to show, either that the plaintiff never had any cause of action, or if he had, that it is discharged by some subsequent matter.

The accused may plead in bar —

1. That the crime for which he is accused is cognizable by the civil courts only. As when the crime alleged is not an offence against military law, and therefore the prosecution could have no ground of accusation.

2. He may plead in bar of trial that he has once been tried for the same offence, in a court proper to try the same.

3. He may plead in bar of trial, the promise from proper authority, that he should be exonerated by becoming a witness in behalf of government, against an accomplice for the same offence.

4. He may plead in bar of trial, the act of limitation, or article of war, which forbids courts martial to try any offence, committed more than two years before the order issued for calling the court martial; and in the militia, that the offence was committed more than one year previous to the exhibition of a written complaint.

III. The accused may plead to the jurisdiction or competency of the court.

1. That the court is not legally detailed, therefore cannot take cognizance of the offence alleged.

2. As when the court is detailed from improper corps of the army or militia.

3. When officers are detailed by the arbitrary will of the officer commanding, without regard to the roster, it may be considered as another instance of illegal detail.
ON COURTS MARTIAL.

By the sixty-fourth article of war of the United States, a general court martial shall consist of any number of commissioned officers, from five to thirteen, where that number can be convened without manifest injury to the service.

It is to be remembered, that these pleas are to be decided by the court as to their validity. It is hardly necessary to observe, that the party must be prepared with sufficient testimony to substantiate the justice of his claim.

No person, accused before a court martial, can be compelled to make use of any, or either of the pleas of which we have been speaking. 1. He may plead guilty, if he pleases. 2. He may answer foreign to the purpose. 3. He may stand mute. 4. If not a prisoner, he may withdraw.

In either of these cases, the court will proceed to their decision and sentence. It is desirable in all cases, that the accused should make use of his privilege in a plea. But if he persist, then the court will form their sentence according to the circumstances last mentioned. If he answer foreign to the purpose, stand mute, or withdraw, either of them is a contempt of the court, and of the necessary regulations of the country for the promotion of military order and discipline.

When a prisoner, arraigned before a general court martial, shall, from obstinate and deliberate design, stand mute, or answer foreign to the purpose, the court may proceed to trial and judgment as if the prisoner had regularly pleaded guilty. If he confesses the fact, the court are to learn whether he has been compelled to confess through fear, or any other improper measure. Free and voluntary confession, it is said, is deserving of mercy, which the court ought to consider in their sentence. If the confession appears to have been from compulsion of any kind, it is to be rejected, and the court ought to proceed in the trial as though the prisoner had plead the general issue "Not guilty."

ACQUITTAL.

If it appear by the votes of a court martial, that the accused is not guilty, judgment of acquittal is inserted in the minutes; and the whole proceedings are sealed up, attended with the same formalities in the transmission to the war department, as when there is a judgment of "Guilty," and corresponding sentence.
APPENDIX.

When the court has voted the accused not guilty, a bare acquittal will not always be just. An acquittal merely, may frequently have disgrace attached to it. Therefore where circumstances will justify it, a person may be "acquitted with honor," and the honorable circumstances stated specifically.

OF APPEALS.*

The thirty-fifth article of war authorizes regimental or garrison courts martial, from which either party may appeal to a general court martial. But there cannot be an appeal from a general court martial to any other military tribunal.

Regimental courts martial are vested with small powers, and being unable therefore to award a definite settlement of differences between officer and soldier, the law authorizes an appeal.

Regimental courts martial seem to have been principally designed for doing justice to officers or soldiers, who consider themselves aggrieved or abused by their superiors. The thirty-fifth article of war of the United States says—"If any inferior officer or soldier shall think himself wronged by his captain, or other officer, he is to complain thereof to the commanding officer of the regiment, who is hereby required to summon a regimental court martial, for doing justice to the complainant; from which regimental court martial either party may, if he thinks himself still aggrieved, appeal to a general court martial."*

The sixty-seventh article of war says—"No garrison or regimental court martial shall have the power to try capital offences or commissioned officers."

POSTPONEMENT.

Absence of material witness, or witnesses; there being reasonable ground of belief that they may be obtained at a future time stated; and the party not having been guilty of neglect in his endeavors to procure their attendance. To these facts the party must make his affidavit; and if that of the witness, or witnesses referred to, can also be obtained, it will be more likely to succeed. Also the certifi-

* The thirty-fifth article of war says—"But if, on a second hearing, the appeal shall appear vexatious and groundless, the person appealing shall be punished at the discretion of the said court martial."
cate of the sickness of the witness will be good cause of postponement. The certificate must come from a surgeon of the army, or navy, or militia, or from some respectable physician; and the opinion also inserted that the witness is unable to attend.

It will be good cause for postponement that the prosecutor or accused is sick, and unable to attend. This also must be certified by the surgeon or some other respectable physician.

Here it may not be improper to remark, that when the person accused is challenged, at that stage of the proceedings he may move the court for a postponement of his trial, if he is not prepared for his defence.

ADJOURNMENT.

If the court be adjourned from day to day, the minutes of proceedings of the previous sittings are to be read each morning at the opening of the court, when any witness may have an opportunity to correct his testimony, should it be made to appear that the judge advocate had taken it down incorrectly.

All adjournments must be made before the sun's setting and to a time after the sun's rising. "Nor shall any proceedings or trials be carried on, excepting between the hours of eight in the morning and three in the afternoon, excepting in cases which (in the opinion of the officer appointing the court martial) require immediate example."

OF ARRESTS.

Previous to the trial of any officer or soldier, the person complained of must be put under an arrest.

1. The arrest of an officer.

In all cases where the circumstances will permit, an officer is to be arrested by an order or military warrant from an officer, his superior; and all the proceedings relating to the arrest duly authenticated.

The proof of regular proceedings will always be at command, when executed in this manner; nor will they be subject to those casualties, as when the proof depends on the life, or presence of the officer who orders or makes the arrest. The form of a warrant of arrest may be as follows, viz.:
To A. B., adjutant, or, &c. &c.

You are directed forthwith to repair to the quarters of J. H. M., colonel of the —— regiment of the United States infantry (or militia, as the case may be); you will then and there cause the said J. H. M. to be arrested, by reading this warrant, or leaving a copy thereof at his said quarters; that the said J. H. M. may be brought to answer to certain charges of unmilitary conduct exhibited against him: (here insert the articles of charges, if prepared.) Of your doings hereof make due return to me as soon as may be.

R. M., Col. 2d Reg't., &c. &c.

The return of the officer who makes the arrest may be in the form following, viz.:

April 26th, 1842. Agreeably to this warrant, I have caused the within named J. H. M. to be put in arrest, by leaving an attested copy of this warrant at the quarters of the said J. H. M.

Signed. A. B., Adjutant.

A copy of this warrant and return ought immediately to be transmitted to the commanding officer of the department, with a copy of the charges or complaint. After this arrest the officer is not permitted to wear his sword, until discharged from the arrest. If the charges do not imply a crime which may subject the person to capital or any corporal punishment, the officer may be permitted to go at large; but if capital punishment, he is to suffer close confinement, unless otherwise ordered by the commander in chief. If he escapes during his arrest for any crime, he shall be cashiered. "Whenever any officer shall be charged with a crime, he shall be arrested and confined in his barracks, or quarters, or tent, and be deprived of his sword by the commanding officer. And any officer who shall leave his confinement before he shall be set at liberty by his commanding officer, or by a superior officer, shall be cashiered."

Militia officers in time of peace, are not to be permitted to wear their swords after an arrest; nor can they exercise any command, till discharged from the arrest.

"If any officer, after having been put in arrest, shall presume to exercise any military command, until he is discharged from his arrest, he shall be liable to be tried by a court martial, and if convicted, he shall be removed from office."
ON COURTS MARTIAL.

In case of danger of losing an officer by an escape, previous to an arrest, the superior officer will undoubtedly cause an arrest or security of his person by a verbal order, and the formality of proceeding, preparatory to the trial, already detailed, will then be observed.

2. The arrest of non-commissioned officers and privates, or retainers to the camp.

These persons are usually arrested without the formality of a warrant; as they are taken into custody by men under arms, and either confined, or imprisoned, according as the nature and aggravation of the crime alleged against them may require. "Non-commissioned officers and soldiers, charged with crimes, shall be confined until tried by court martial, or released by proper authority." By another article of war, it is intended to secure the officer and soldier from unnecessary and unreasonable confinement.

The term of confinement is limited. "No officer or soldier, who shall be put in arrest, shall continue in confinement more than eight days, or until such time as a court martial can be assembled."

Pretensions of difficulty in procuring a court martial, may continue a person in long confinement. It is, however, to be remembered, that the meanest soldier has a remedy in the civil courts, for all abuses committed by an officer, besides the amenability of the officer to a court martial. A vexatious or malicious arrest will also subject the author of it to a court martial.

OF THE SENTENCE OF A COURT MARTIAL.

A court martial has the combined powers and duties of the civil court and jury. In giving judgment against the accused, they act the part of a jury; in passing sentence, they act the part of the court.

The sentence is the last most interesting and solemn duty, and which a court martial are never called to perform, except in a case of a previous judgment of guilt, decided by the same body.

The accused having been adjudged guilty, the court will proceed to deliberate and agree on a sentence that will correspond with the criminality.

In proceeding to obtain the sentence of a court martial, all the evidence which may have a tendency, as well to the mitigation and
exculpation, as the aggravation of the crime, is to be brought into view, and calmly discussed.

Persons who voted on either side, on the question of guilt, may also vote on the question of punishment or sentence. But writers on military law say differently.

Adye and Sullivan say, "If it appear, on the casting up of the votes, that the majority declare the prisoner guilty, those who have found him so, are to pass sentence or judgment. For it cannot be supposed that those who have found him not guilty, would assign him any punishment."

The minds of the court being fully prepared, the nature and degree of the punishment is ascertained by question from the judge advocate, and answer of every member, severally, to each and every question which may be necessary; beginning with the youngest in commission.

**OF THE MARSHAL.**

A marshal is an officer attached to a court martial, and is created by special appointment for a particular court. In the British service, an officer of this kind is appointed and commissioned for every division of the army, with certain powers and duties. It is his duty, and he has power at all times, to suppress disorders in the camp, as well as in a particular court martial.

All courts martial should appoint a marshal to attend them, this officer being a necessary part of such court. By the laws of Massachusetts, "all courts martial shall be constituted of a president, twelve members, a judge advocate, and a marshal." This officer, to a court martial, is as a sheriff to a civil court.

The marshal will attend the court martial continually, during the session; obey and execute their orders; preserve silence amongst the attendants and spectators; secure and bring into court such prisoners as may be ordered on trial, or may be committed to his care. If a marshal is not appointed before the sitting of the court, the president may issue a warrant to some suitable person, to act in that capacity.

It may be made in the following form.

*To A. B. &c.*

Whereas, a court martial has been ordered to assemble at
on the day of , for the trial of J. H. M., you are hereby authorized and appointed to officiate as marshal at said court. (If the person is to be tried on a criminal process,) You are to take the said J. H. M. into your custody, and have him before said court at the time and place above named; and him safely keep, until he shall be delivered by due course of law; and for so doing, this shall be your sufficient warrant.

Given under my hand, &c., &c.

J. A.,

President of the court martial.

The person who appoints the court martial is empowered to appoint the marshal.

Ought not a marshal to rank with the judge advocate, and be appointed and commissioned in every division, where a judge advocate is necessary?

The marshal is the proper person to open and adjourn the court by order of the president.

EXECUTION OF SENTENCE.

Previous to the execution of sentence of court martial, the record and all the papers which concern the trial of the prisoner or accused person, must be transmitted to the officer, who ordered the court to assemble. No sentence can be put in execution, till it has been approved by him.

Any sentence of a general officer, either in peace or war, which must be laid before the president of the United States; and also cases where the sentence extends to loss of life, or dismissal of a commissioned officer, in time of peace.

By a general order, issued from the adjutant general's office of the United States, September 5th, 1812, the sentence of death, or other sentence, during the continuance of the present war, is to be carried into execution, if approved by the "general officer having the command of the department, within which such general court martial may be held."

In case of the death or discharge of the commanding officer, who ordered the court martial, before the sentence is awarded, his successor in office, or "commanding officer for the time being," may approve the sentence and order execution.

With regard to the manner of carrying into effect the sentence of court martial, little need be said, excepting as to the infliction of
“the extreme punishment.” All sentences are executed in obedience to orders from the commanding officer of the department, or officer ordering the court. These orders will vary according to the punishment to be inflicted.

As regards the execution of the sentence of death, it may be proper to give a more particular detail of its awful solemnities. As this punishment is designed to exhibit a salutary example to the survivors of an army; the prescribed formalities incident to such a scene, ought to be strictly regarded, that the object of the government may be obtained, in the infliction of “the extreme punishment.”

The officer commanding, having approved the sentence of court martial, by which the sentence of death is to be inflicted, issues his warrant, or orders, in proper form. This warrant is generally directed to the second in command. The following may be the form, namely.

To A. B., brigadier general of the United States infantry.

Whereas a court martial was legally assembled at on the 28th day of April, in the year of our Lord, 1842, for the trial of J. H. M., colonel of the regiment of the United States infantry, on a charge of cowardice, and shamefully abandoning his post, in violation of the fifty-second article of war: And whereas the said court have adjudged the said colonel J. H. M. to be guilty of the crime alleged against him, in said charges exhibited; and have awarded sentence against him to suffer the pains of death: And whereas I have found it expedient for the good of the service, to approve of said sentence, and to cause the same to be carried into execution:

Now therefore, I do hereby require, that you, brigadier general A. B., do cause the said sentence to be carried into execution, on Monday, the second day of May next, between the hours of eight and eleven o'clock in the forenoon of said day; that you then and there cause the said colonel J. H. M. to be shot dead.

For so doing, this shall be to you, and all others acting under your orders, sufficient warrant and authority.

Given at head quarters, under my hand and seal, this twenty-eighth day of April, in the year of our Lord, eighteen hundred and forty-two.

Signed

D. H.,
Commander in Chief.
ON COURTS MARTIAL.

In pursuance of the foregoing, the brigadier general, to whom the warrant is directed and communicated, issues his orders for carrying into effect the object of the commander in chief. For this purpose, his orders will be couched in such terms as to produce the movements, formalities, and results here detailed.

All the troops which can be conveniently brought into view, without interfering with the more important duties of the service, are to be paraded at an early hour, to witness the punishment due to him who has violated the laws.

All the guards of the day are to be assembled at a place designated, to take charge of the prisoner, and prevent disorders.

An execution party must be detailed, consisting of a sergeant and twelve privates, their muskets loaded with ball cartridges, whose duty it shall be to complete the execution. If more prisoners than one are to suffer at the same time, an execution party must be detailed for each criminal, consisting of the number last mentioned.

The field officer of the day will command the guards and execution party, under the direction of the marshal, or person appointed to officiate as such.

The troops are to be drawn up in line, prepared for the formation of three sides of the square; or they may be formed in the square as they arrive.

Each commandant of a regiment (or corps) will be notified, previous to the movement of the troops, the particular part of the square designated for his troops to occupy. If the troops are first paraded in line, the square will be formed forward by the echelon of companies. The centre (or one third of the line) stands fast, forming the front face of the square; the flanks forming the right and left face of the square. In whatever manner the square is formed, the troops are to be faced inwards, front rank leading.

The guards and the execution party repair to the prisoner's quarters at a time pointed out in the orders. The prisoner is delivered to the custody of the marshal, if not already in his keeping, and is placed under the watch of the guard. The procession will then form and move in the following order to the square, or place of execution, viz: —

1. The Marshal, on horseback.
3. Execution party.
4. Prisoner, and attending chaplains.
5. Field officer of the day.
6. The guards, by platoons.

The procession moves in ordinary time, music playing a funeral dirge. If the troops drawn up in square consist of so great a number that the criminal cannot be properly exhibited to their view at the centre of the square, the guards will halt when they arrive at the open side of the square. The marshal, the music, the criminal, and the chaplains, will then march on and pass the several corps, marching in front of the line, and within twenty paces of it; moving in the first place before the right side of the square, returning on the left. The drummers of the several corps of the line of square, as the criminal passes the corps, will beat the dirge played by the band, having their drums muffled. The coffin for the criminal is previously brought and placed within the square, at the centre, on the spot of execution.

When the criminal has passed the round, the guards (who kept their ground at the open side of the square) will move up in rear of the criminal and form company, and when arrived at the centre (where the execution party make their stand,) they file from the right and left of companies, and pass by files the flanks of the execution party. This party is formed facing the criminal, at the proper distance for certain execution. At this moment the music ceases, and silence is ordered. The sentence of death and warrant for execution is read by the marshal. The prisoner kneels at the place prepared, with his face covered. The firing party, at signal from the marshal, make ready, bring down their pieces, and take aim; at another signal — fire, all at the same time.

That these solemnities may have the effect designed, orders should be given by signal, and the whole conducted with the most profound silence.

EIGHT CLASSES OF SENTENCES.

Courts martial in the army or navy of the United States may award sentences for the infliction of the several kinds of punishment which follow, and all of which may be arranged under eight heads, or classes, viz:—

I. Death.
II. Cashiering.
III. Dismissal.
IV. Suspension.
V. Imprisonment.
VI. Reprimand.
VII. Degradation.
VIII. Confinement to hard labor in forts and garrisons.

I. SENTENCE OF DEATH.

This sentence may be awarded conformably to the articles of war, as follows, viz.:

Article.
7. For mutiny.
8. For not suppressing mutiny.
9. For striking superiors.
20. For desertion.
23. For advising desertion.
46. For sleeping on post.
49. For occasioning false alarms in camp.
51. For doing violence to persons bringing provisions to camp.
52. For cowardice, or shamefully abandoning post; inducing others to do it; casting away arms and ammunition; quitting a platoon to plunder.
53. For making known the parole or watchword; or giving a false one when on post.
55. For forcing a safeguard.
56. For relieving an enemy, with money, victuals, or ammunition; harboring or protecting them.
57. For holding correspondence with or giving intelligence to the enemy, directly or indirectly.
59. For compelling the commanding officer of a post or fort to give up to the enemy.
101. For acting as a spy.

Sentence of death may be awarded by courts martial (for any or either of the crimes stated in the fifteen preceding articles of war,) against any person who has been adjudged guilty of a violation of any, or either of the said articles. But the court will not be compelled by the law to give sentence of death, excepting in two in-
stances, viz. the 55th article, for forcing a safeguard, and 101st, for acting as a spy.

In these two cases the court can receive no apology from the prisoner. The law is positive. Sentence of death must pass.

In the thirteen other cases which may be brought before the court martial, the sentence may be — Death; or it may not, according to the discretion of the court.

The articles referred to, generally conclude in these words: — "Shall suffer death, or such other punishment as shall be inflicted by the sentence of court martial." The court, therefore, in all these cases, may inflict a less punishment than death, "according to the aggravation of the crime."

II. SENTENCE OF CASHIERING.

The following fifteen articles directing the sentence of cashiering:

Article.

5. For disrespectful words against the president of the United States, vice president, congress, or chief magistrate where quartered — "may be cashiered."

14. For signing false certificate relating to absence of officer or soldier — "shall be cashiered."

15. For making or signing a false muster of man or horse — "shall be cashiered."

16. Commissary of musters, for taking money by way of gratification, on mustering any regiment or corps — "shall be displaced, and be utterly disabled to have or to hold any office."

17. For mustering a person not a soldier — "shall be cashiered."

18. For making a false return to the secretary of war, or other superior officer — "shall be cashiered."

22. For not confining a deserter when known to be such — "shall be cashiered."

25. For challenging, or accepting a challenge to a duel — "shall be cashiered."

26. For willingly suffering any person under command to go forth to fight a duel — "shall be cashiered."

28. For upbraiding another for not accepting a challenge — "shall be cashiered."

32. For refusing to redress abuses, or disorders, or not preventing soldiers disturbing fairs or markets — "shall be cashiered."
33. For neglecting or refusing to deliver to the civil magistrate, any soldier accused of injuring citizens of the United States—"shall be cashiered."

39. For embezzling or misapplying public money—"shall be cashiered."

45. For being drunk on guard, or other duty—"shall be cashiered."

77. For leaving confinement after being arrested—"shall be cashiered."

The duty of a court martial, in awarding sentence, is clearly expressed in these fifteen articles of war. They are to cashier, or either or all of them. It will be observed, that the court have no discretionary power as to the sentence, when an officer is convicted on any of these articles, except the fifth; in that article it is expressed—"may be cashiered." In all the other fourteen articles it is peremptory—"shall be cashiered." No other sentence can be awarded.

There may, in one case, be an additional punishment, that is, where an officer is cashiered for cowardice; as in eighty-fifth article—"In all cases where a commissioned officer is cashiered for cowardice or fraud, it shall be added in the sentence, that the crime, name, and place of abode and punishment of the delinquent be published in the newspapers, in and about the camp, and of the particular State from which the offender came, or where he usually resides; after which it shall be deemed scandalous for an officer to associate with him."

III. SENTENCE OF DISMISSAL FROM OFFICE.

To some persons this sentence may appear similar to the last mentioned. But it is a different punishment.

An officer who is cashiered is not only dismissed the service, but disqualified as to holding or enjoying an office in future. An officer dismissed is not disqualified. Cashiering, therefore, supposes or implies disqualification; dismissal does not. When dismissal is awarded in the sentence of courts martial, it attaches disgrace to the officer, according to the kind of dismissal which is awarded. It may vary from a very small to an extreme degree of infamy. We shall consider it of two kinds, viz. dismissal general, and dismissal specific.
The first may be awarded with little disgrace attending it; the latter cannot.

A general dismissal is, when a court martial merely directs the officer to be dismissed the service, without adding any detail of the manner. In this case, the officer who ordered the court martial makes a private communication of the sentence.

A specific dismissal is when the sentence enters into the detail, pointing out the particular in which it shall be executed. This may be attended with disgrace, according to the offence. Instances have occurred, when an officer has been dismissed before the troops embodied, his sword broke either over his head, or immediately before his face. In other cases he may be dismissed at the head of his own corps; or the charges against him, and sentence read at the head of every regiment in the service. And the dismissed officer may be followed out of camp by the drummers, playing "the rogue's march."

We find but few articles of war which allude specially to the punishment of dismissal. Those articles which authorize "death, or such other punishment as a court martial shall order," will also authorize this kind of punishment. An officer is liable to this kind of punishment for violating the following articles.

Art. 36. "For embezzling or misapplying provisions, forage, arms, or ammunition; and shall also forfeit all his pay, and be dismissed the service."

Art. 83. "For being guilty of conduct unbecoming an officer and a gentleman, shall be dismissed the service."

The direction in these articles is prorogatory. They appear to allude to the general or ordinary private dismissal, but may undoubtedly warrant the specific, in case a court martial should judge the offence to deserve a more disgraceful or infamous punishment.

The fourth article also provides for the discharge of a chaplain, for absenting himself from the duties of his office.

No power is given in these articles, to award sentence of disqualification. It may be proper to dismiss, and not to disqualify. A person may be unfit for a particular office, but still be qualified for some other office in the service. He may be an improper person for managing the provisions or ammunition of the camp; but at the same time be well qualified to manage a platoon.
IV. THE SENTENCE OF SUSPENSION.

Suspension is of two kinds, namely; suspension from power, and suspension from pay.

This sentence affects either the pay or emoluments of an officer, or both, as the court may order.

Art. 84. "In cases where a court martial may think it proper to sentence a commissioned officer to be suspended from command, they shall have power also to suspend his pay and emolument, from the same time, according to the nature and heinousness of the offence."

This is the only article which names this kind of punishment; but it may be awarded on the articles which give discretionary power. Although this punishment suspends from command and emolument, it does not divest of the military character. "Suspension, as a military punishment, (says an English writer,) was probably intended to operate, as a pecuniary fining does in that of the common law."*

Another writer on military law observes:—"Suspension can neither be considered as deprivation or degradation. It does not divest an officer of his military character, though it puts him under a temporary incapacity to exercise the duties of his station; he still possesses his rank, though he does not reap any immediate advantage from it. In fact, it may be looked upon and considered as borrowed from the ecclesiastic jurisdiction, which admitted suspension as a minor excommunication."†

Officers only are subject to sentence of suspension from command. Suspension from pay is applicable to both officers and soldiers.

V. SENTENCE OF IMPRISONMENT.

The articles of war of the United States do not name this punishment. It is inferred from the power given in those articles, which leave the court to decide. This sentence may be awarded by court martial, for a term of years, or for life. It is not to be understood, however, that sentence or excessive confinement would be justified, except for the violation of those articles by which life is forfeited. If the prisoner's crime be highly aggravated, it may be solitary imprisonment; if otherwise, he may be ordered within certain limits.

* James.  † Sullivan.
The sentence of confinement may be varied according to the impression which they may have received, during the examination of the case.* This is applicable to officers only, as another species of confinement is calculated for the soldier, as pointed out in the eighth class, p. 263.

VI. SENTENCE OF REPRIMAND.

This is the mildest sentence which can be inflicted by a general court martial.

It may be either public or private.

Public, when it is executed at the head of the corps to which the accused belongs, by the commanding officer who administers the reproofs; or, in general orders, from the commander in chief.

Private reprimand, is reproof administered by the commander in chief, or person who appointed the court martial, to the condemned officer or soldier. This is done without witnesses. The particular form of the reprimand is not prescribed by the court martial, but is left to the discretion of the commander in chief, or person appointed for the purpose, who puts the sentence in execution, after having full information on the subject.

Courts martial may award sentence of reprimand, for the violation of all the articles of war of the United States, eighteen only excepted. These are such as bind the court to award a sentence for the infliction of a punishment specified, namely. Articles 55, 101, death; Articles 14, 15, 16, 17, 18, 22, 25, 26, 28, 32, 33, 39, 45, 77, cashiering; Articles 36 and 83, dismissal.

It appears, then, that there are but eighteen cases, where a court martial are bound to award a particular sentence for a specified crime. In all other cases, they have a discretionary power in deciding on the sentence; therefore, reprimand being considered the lightest of all military punishments, it may be awarded in all cases, other than the eighteen accepted.

VII. SENTENCE OF DEGRADATION.

This sentence is seldom awarded against commissioned officers. It is principally designed for the punishment of non-commissioned officers. In the naval service, it is frequently awarded against

* The powers of courts martial in the United States should be limited.
ON COURTS MARTIAL.

commissioned officers. The term degrade is sometimes used to signify the complete divestment of power and rank of an officer; but in such case it is incorrectly used. It is the telling down or lowering an officer from his rank or post, or a soldier from his station. It does not extend to a dismissal from service, as respects an officer; but a soldier, if he be stationed in the lowest rank, must of necessity be dismissed, or there can be no degradation. It is true that an officer, when dismissed, is degraded; but he may be degraded without dismissal.

This punishment is not named in the articles of war, and can only be inflicted for the violation of those articles, which give a discretionary power to courts martial.

Courts martial in the militia have no power to degrade; but non-commissioned officers may be degraded by reducing them to the ranks, which is done by commandant of regiment. "Any non-commissioned officer, who shall be guilty of disobedience of orders, neglect of duty, or other unmilitary conduct, may be reduced to the ranks by the commanding officer of the regiment to which he belongs, by and with the advice of the commanding officer of the company, to which such non-commissioned officer belongs."

VIII. SENTENCE OF CONFINEMENT TO HARD LABOR IN FORTS AND GARRISONS.

This is a punishment applicable only to non-commissioned officers and soldiers. It has been considered as more beneficial to the community, and much more so to the criminal himself, than corporal punishment.

When this sentence is awarded instead of the punishment of death, we have the same substantial reasons, as when one is convicted before a civil court, and sentenced to the state prison. The articles of war authorize the punishment of whipping; but an act of Congress of 1812, forbids that punishment.

Although it be said, that general and regimental courts martial may take cognizance of offences not named in the articles of war, and punish at their discretion; yet it is to be remembered, they are limited in that discretion, by the laws of the land; that no regimental court martial can try an officer for any offence whatever; their power extends only to the trial of non-commissioned officers and
soldiers, for "offences not capital." Nor can a general court martial exercise this discretionary power in any manner incompatible with the rights and privileges secured to the officer and soldier, by the laws and constitution. Much less have they a claim to exercise those discretionary powers over any persons, other than such as may be attached to the army. It is said in the ninety-ninth article of war, that "All crimes not capital, and all disorders and neglects which officers and soldiers may be guilty of, to the prejudice of good order and military discipline, though not mentioned in the articles of war, are to be taken cognizance of by a general or regimental court martial, according to the nature and degree of the offence, and to be punished at their discretion."

Nor can that discretionary power be exercised to inflict a greater punishment than is named in the article. If it be said the sentence may be reprimand, or such other punishment as the court shall order, the sentence cannot be cashiering; the discretionary power would not, in such case, be reasonably exercised, because extended to a greater punishment than the one specified. The members of courts martial are ever to consider themselves to be limited in the exercise of their discretionary powers, within the bounds of reason and sound discretion. No decision is to be made which shall militate either with reason or the intent of the law. Great and extensive are the powers given to courts martial, over the property, character, and life of the fellow soldier; and they are ever to exercise those powers, with due regard to mercy, as well as justice, and the interest of the service.

ARTICLES OF WAR.

Four Classes.

CLASS I.

Respecting Courts Martial.

Article.

64. Of general courts martial.
65. Of the appointment of general courts martial.
66. Regimental courts martial.
67. Garrison or regimental courts martial not to try capital offences.
68. Officers of the marine and land forces united at courts martial.
69. Judge advocate, counsel for prisoner, oath of judge advocate.
Article.

70. Persons standing mute when arraigned, the court martial shall proceed.

71. When a member of a court martial is challenged, it shall be in writing.

72. Form of voting at courts martial; to begin with the youngest in commission.

73. Oath of witnesses before a court martial.

74. Depositions may be admitted in cases not capital, if not of the line or staff of the army.

75. No officer to be tried but by a general court martial.

76. Courts martial may punish disorderly persons, or those who disturb their proceedings.

77. Every officer, previous to his trial, shall be arrested and deprived of his sword.

78. Non-commissioned officers and soldiers shall be confined before trial.

79. Confinement continues until a court martial can be conveniently assembled.

84. Courts martial may sentence to suspension of command and emoluments.

85. Courts martial may publish in the newspapers for cowardice.

88. Courts martial have not power to try persons for offences committed more than two years previous.

96. Courts martial may try all persons receiving pay or hire in the artillery or corps of engineers.

97. Courts martial may try those belonging to troops of every description, in the service of the United States.

99. Courts martial have power to try all offences not capital, although not mentioned in the articles of war.

CLASS II.

Of Crimes.

This class, designating the crimes of military persons, will be arranged in three divisions.

First Division. Violation of religious and moral obligations.

Second Division. Offences against the state, its sovereignty, or safety.
Third Division. Offences which more immediately affect the rights of individuals.

FIRST DIVISION.

Violation of religious and moral obligations.

Article.

2. Indecent or irreverent behavior at divine service; if an officer, tried by court martial; if a soldier, fined.


29. Sutlers, keeping open shops on the Sabbath, shall be dismissed the service.

45. For drunkenness, when on guard; if an officer, he shall be cashiered; if a soldier, he shall be sentenced by court martial.

SECOND DIVISION.

Offences against the state, its sovereignty or safety.

Article.

5. Contemptuous or disrespectful words against the president, vice president, or congress, punished by cashiering.

7. For mutiny or sedition, death.

8. Not suppressing mutiny, death, or such other punishment as may be ordered by sentence of court martial.

9. Any officer, who shall strike, or offer violence to a superior, on any pretence, shall suffer death or other punishment.

14. Signing a false certificate, relative to pay or absence; court martial shall give sentence of disqualification.

15. False musters of man, or horse, or muster rolls; disqualification.


17. False musters; disqualifications.

18. False returns; disqualifications.

20. Desertion; punished with death.

21. Absent without leave; punishment discretionary.

22. A non-commissioned officer, or soldier, enlisting into another corps, without previous discharge; punished as a deserter.

23. Advising to desert; death.

36. Embezzling or misapplying goods, clothing, or ammunition; dismissal from service.
Article.

37. Non-commissioned officers or soldiers, who waste ammunition; punishment discretionary.

38. Non-commissioned officers or soldiers spoiling, selling, or losing arms; punishment discretionary.

39. Embezzling of money by an officer; he shall be cashiered.

40. Non-commissioned officers or soldiers, found one mile from camp without leave; punishment discretionary.

41. Lying out of camp or quarters; punishment discretionary.

42. Not retiring to quarters at retreat beating; punished according to the nature of the crime.

43. Not repairing to the place of parade, or leaving it without liberty; sentence by court martial.

44. A sentinel found sleeping on his post; shall suffer death.

45. A soldier hiring duty performed; shall be tried by a regimental court martial.

46. Conniving at the hiring of duty performed; shall be tried by court martial.

47. Occasioning a false alarm; death.

48. Quitting a guard, platoon, or division; to be tried by court martial.

49. Doing violence to persons bringing provisions to camp; death or other punishment.

50. Misbehavior before an enemy, abandoning a post shamefully; death or discretionary punishment.

51. Making known the watch-word; death or other punishment.

52. Forcing a safeguard; death.

53. Relieving an enemy with money, victuals, or ammunition; death or other punishment.

54. Holding correspondence with the enemy, or giving intelligence, directly or indirectly; death or other punishment.

55. Neglecting to secure stores taken from the enemy; officer shall be answerable according to the offence.

56. Compelling an officer to give up a post or garrison; death or other punishment.

57. An officer commanding a guard, releasing a prisoner without proper authority; punishment discretionary.

58. Officer to whom prisoners are committed, neglecting to report
APPENDIX.

Article.

to the commanding officer within twenty-four hours; punishment discretionary.

83. Commissioned officer conducting in a manner unbecoming an officer and a gentleman; dismissed the service.

101. Spies shall suffer death.

THIRD DIVISION.

Offences which more immediately affect the rights of individuals.

Article.

6. Contempt of commanding officer; punishment discretionary.

24. Provoking speeches or gestures; punished by arrest and confinement.

25. Giving a challenge to an officer or soldier, or accepting a challenge; disqualification.

26. Those who permit duels — punished as challengers.

28. Any officer or soldier upbraiding another, for refusing a challenge — punished as challenger.

32. Officer refusing to redress abuses, or see restitution made to citizens or soldiers — punished discretionary.

33. A soldier injuring the property of a citizen, shall be delivered over by the commanding officer to the civil authority.

54. Officers or soldiers, who injure the property of citizens, shall be liable to court martial, besides such penalties as he may be liable to by the laws of the country.

CLASS III.

Comprehending Rights and Duties of Officers, and others, belonging to the Army.

Article.

4. Chaplain absenting himself from duties assigned him, may be fined, or dismissed the service.

10. Every person enlisted must hear the articles of war read within six days, and take the oath of allegiance.

11. No person enlisted, to be dismissed the service without a written discharge; nor an officer discharged, without an order from the president, or sentence of a general court martial.

12. Commanding officers of regiments may give furloughs to non-commissioned officers and soldiers. Captains, commanding in garrisons, may give furloughs to non-commis-
Article.

sioned officers and soldiers, not exceeding twenty days in duration.

13. At every muster, commanding officers of each regiment or corps, shall give to the commissary of musters certificates respecting absent persons.

19. Officers commanding regiments or corps, shall make monthly returns to the war department.

27. Every officer may quell disturbances; an inferior officer is to be obeyed.

29. Sutlers are not to keep open houses or shops after nine o'clock at night, nor before reveille beating, nor on Sundays.

30. Sutlers must supply good and wholesome provisions.

31. Officers shall not exact exorbitant fees from sutlers, for the use of houses or stalls.

32. Every officer shall keep good order in garrison, and on the march.

34. Every officer, thinking himself wronged by his colonel or commanding officer, may complain to the general, who is required to examine into the complaint.

35. Any inferior officer or soldier, thinking himself wronged by his captain, may complain to his colonel, who is required to call a regimental court martial.

40. Captains are accountable for the arms, accoutrements, ammunition, &c., of the company to which he belongs.

60. Sutlers and retainers to the camp, and all others serving with the army, are subject to the rules and regulations of the army.

61. Officers having brevets, may take rank at courts martial, and on detachments, according to brevets.

62. When different corps join, or perform duty together, the officer highest in rank, whether of the regular army or militia, shall take command of the whole.

63. Engineers are not subject to be ordered on any duty beyond the line of their immediate profession, except by the special order of the president of the United States; but they are to receive every mark of respect, to which their rank in the army may entitle them respectively, and are liable to be
transferred by the president, from one corps to another, regard being paid to rank.

80. Officers commanding guards, must receive prisoners committed to their charge by any officer belonging to the United States' service.

86. Commanding officer of a post or detachment, may report to the commanding officer of the department any case where court martial is necessary, who may order the accused and witnesses to be removed to the nearest post, in case of want of sufficient members for a court martial.

87. No person to be sentenced to death, but by a concurrence of two thirds of the court.

89. Officers having powers to appoint courts martial, shall have power to pardon or mitigate punishment.

90. Duty of judge-advocate. The judge-advocate, or recorder, shall administer to the members their oaths, &c.

94. When any commissioned officer shall die, or be killed in the service of the United States, the major of the regiment, or the officer doing the major's duty in his absence, or in any post or garrison the second officer in command, or the assistant military agent, shall immediately secure all his effects, or equipage then in camp, or quarters, and shall make an inventory thereof, and forthwith transmit the same to the office of the department of war, to the end that his executors or administrators may receive the same.

95. When any non-commissioned officer, or soldier, shall die, or be killed in the service of the United States, the commanding officer of the troop, or corps, in the presence of two other commissioned officers, shall take an account of all his effects above his arms and accoutrements, and transmit the same to the office of the department of war; which effects are to be paid to the representatives of the deceased. In case any officer, so authorized to take care of the effects of the deceased officer or soldier, should have an occasion to leave his post previous to the effects being accounted for to their representatives, he shall, before being permitted to quit the same, deposit in the hands of the commanding officer, all the effects of the deceased officer or soldier.
Article.

98. Officers of militia, serving with the regular army, shall take rank after the officers of the army of the same grade, although they be older in commission.

100. The president of the United States shall have power to prescribe the uniform of the army.

101. Articles of war to be read every six months to every garrison, regiment, troop or company, in the service of the United States.

CLASS IV.

Respecting Courts of Inquiry.

Article.

91. In cases where the general or commanding officer may order a court of inquiry, to examine into the nature of any transaction, against any officer, or soldier, the court shall consist of one or more officers, not exceeding three, and a judge-advocate, or other suitable person, as a recorder, to reduce the proceedings and evidence to writing, all of whom shall be sworn to the faithful performance of their duty. Witnesses shall be examined on oath. The court shall not give their opinion, except they shall specially be required, but simply make known the facts. The parties shall also be permitted to cross-examine, and interrogate the witnesses.

92. Court of Inquiry; proceedings to be authenticated by the president and judge-advocate.

93. Members of the court, and judge-advocate, to be sworn. Courts of Inquiry prohibited, unless ordered by the president, or demanded by the accused.
No. 4.

CARBINE MANUAL.*

DISMOUNTED DRAGOON.

## CONTENTS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Support Arms.</td>
<td>Loading in ten times.</td>
<td>Loading at Will.</td>
<td>Target Practice with Carbine.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Arms at Will.</td>
<td>Aim.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Carry Arms.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Secure Arms.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The squad being at carry arms, the instructor commands

**Order — Arms.** (One time, three motions.)

1. At the last part of the command, which is arms, detach the carbine with the right hand perpendicularly, and four inches from the shoulder, seizing it at the same time with the left hand, half way between the two bands.

2. Seize the carbine with the right hand above the left.

3. Let go of the carbine with the left hand, which is dropped smartly by the side; extend the right arm, bring the carbine to the ground, without shock, the toe of the butt two inches from and on a line with the right toe, the elbow near the body, the barrel between the thumb and the three first fingers extended, the little finger behind the barrel.

* See Hall's Carbine.
Carry — Arms.  (One time, three motions.)

1. At the last part of the command, which is arms, raise the carbine perpendicularly with the right hand, the barrel four inches from the shoulder; seize it with the left hand half way between the two hands.

2. Seize the small of the stock with the right hand, the thumb one and a half inch below the guard.

3. Press the carbine against the shoulder with the right hand, and drop the left hand smartly by the side.

Principles of Carried Arms.

The carbine in the right hand, against the hollow of the shoulder, the barrel perpendicular, the guard to the front, the arm slightly bent, without separating the elbow from the body, the right hand around the small of the stock, the thumb under the guard.
Present — Arms. (One time.)

At the last part of the command, which is arms, carry the carbine with the right hand opposite to the middle of the body, the barrel perpendicular, the guard to the front, the fore-arm pressed against the body without being constrained; seize the carbine with the left hand, the little finger touching the upper part of the guard, the thumb extended against the swivel bar, the hand as high as the elbow; reverse the position of the right hand on the small of the stock, the fingers extended.

Carry — Arms. (One time.)

At the last part of the command, which is arms, shift the position of the right hand, bringing the thumb to the front; place the carbine against the shoulder with the right hand, the barrel perpendicular, and drop the left hand at the same time by the side.
Support — Arms. (One time, four motions.)

1. At the last part of the command, which is arms, detach the carbinewith the right hand perpendicularly, four inches from the shoulder, seize it at the same time at the lower band with the left hand.

2. Raise the carbinewith both hands, turning the barrel to the front, and place it opposite to the hollow of the left shoulder, the left hand as high as the neck, the thumb extended; reverse the position of the right hand on the small of the stock, the flat of the stock against the hip.

3. Place the left fore-arm on the breast, the cock resting on the fore-arm, the arm extended on the right breast, the fingers joined, and the thumb separated from them.

4. Drop the right hand smartly by the side.

Carry — Arms. (One time, four motions.)

1. At the last part of the command, which is arms, seize the carbinewith the right hand at the small of the stock.

2. Detach the carbinefour inches from the shoulder, place the left hand at the lower band, the thumb extended, the fore arm along the stock.

3. Bring down the carbinewith both hands, turning the guard to the front; place it perpendicularly opposite to, and four inches from the right shoulder, the left hand a little above the right hip, the right hand shifting its position at the small of the stock.

4. Place the carbinewith the right hand, and drop the left hand smartly by the side.

Arms — At will. (One time, one motion.)

Carry the carbinewith pleasure, on either shoulder, with one or both hands, the muzzle always up.

Carry — Arms. (One time, one motion.)

Retake smartly the position of carry arms.
Secure — Arms. (One time, two motions.)

1. At the last part of the command, which is arms, raise the carbine about two inches, seize it with the left hand at the right shoulder, grasp it with the right hand a little below the lower band, the thumb extended along the barrel.

2. Lower the muzzle, bring the butt under the right arm, the guard resting on the hip, the barrel uppermost; at the same time drop the left hand to its side.

Carry — Arms. (One time, two motions.)

1. At the last part of the command, which is arms, throw up the carbine with the right hand, seize it at the right shoulder with the left hand, and shift the right hand to the small of the stock, as in carry arms.

2. Drop the left hand to the left side.

Order — Arms.

As prescribed, p. 272.

Sling — Carbine. (One time, two motions.)

1. At the last part of the command, which is carbine, raise the carbine perpendicularly with the right hand, and place it in the left hand, which seizes it below the lower band, the thumb extended, the barrel to the front; incline the carbine to the right, that the rings may hang down, the left hand as high as, and opposite to the neck; slip the swivel to the front with the right hand, the thumb pressing upon the short side to open it; insert it in the rings.
2. Seize the carbin e at the small of the stock with the right hand, let it go with the left hand, which is dropped by the side; pass the carbine behind the back, lowering the muzzle, push the butt to the rear, and drop the right hand by the side.

Unsling — Carbine. (One time, two motions.)

1. At the last part of the command, which is carbine, seize the carbine at the small of the stock with the right hand; raise it, seize it again with the left hand below the lower band; the thumb extended, the hand as high as, and opposite to the neck; incline the carbine to the right, free the swivel from the rings with the right hand, and push the swivel to the rear.

2. Seize the carbine with the right hand, above and near the left hand; bring it down, turning it at the same time, and resume the position of order arms.

Ground — Arms. (One time, two motions.)

1. At the last part of the command, which is arms, turn the carbine with the right hand, the swivel-bar to the front; bend the body, advance the left foot, lay the carbine on the ground in front of the body; the guard near the ground, the toe of the butt on a line with the right toe, the right knee slightly bent, the right heel raised.

2. Rise up, bring the left foot by the side of the right, and drop the hands by the sides.

Raise — Arms. (One time, two motions.)

1. At the last part of the command, which is arms, bend the body, advance the left foot, the heel opposite to the lower band.

2. Raise the carbine, bringing the left foot by the side of the right; at the same time turn the carbine with the right hand, the guard to the front.

Note. — When the men have their sabres, at the same time that they execute the first motions of ground, and raise arms, they seize the sabre with the left hand, the point to the front, the hand closed, the thumb extended, and touching the lower ring of the scabbard.

Loading in ten times.

The squad being at carry arms, the instructor commands — Load in ten times.
1. **Load.** (One time, two motions.)

   At the command, load, make a half face to the right on the left heel, carrying the right foot square behind the left, the hollow of it opposite to, and three inches from the left heel; detach the carbine perpendicularly four inches from the shoulder with the right hand; raising it a little, and seize it with the left hand, opposite to the right breast, the thumb extended on the stock; change the position of the right hand at the small of the stock, turning the thumb to the rear.

   2. Throw the butt under the arm with the right hand; the left hand two inches below the right breast; the left elbow close to the body; the muzzle as high as the chin, half cock, remove the old cap if there be one, and carry the hand to the cap box.

2. **Prime.** (One time.)

   At the command, prime, place a cap on the nipple, press it down with the thumb, let down the cock, and carry the right hand to the cartridge box.

3. **Handle — Cartridge.** (One time.)

   At the last part of the command, which is cartridge, take a cartridge between the thumb and the two first fingers; then place the end of it between the teeth.

4. **Tear — Cartridge.** (One time.)

   At the last part of the command, which is cartridge, tear the cartridge to the powder, holding it near the opening between the thumb and two first fingers; carry the right hand to the small of the stock, and seize it with the two last fingers and the palm of the hand, the wrist against the body, the elbow to the rear and slightly separated from the body.
5. **Cast — About.** (One time, two motions.)

1. At the last part of the command, which is about, bring the carbine vertical with both hands, extending smartly the right arm; pass the carbine in front of the body, turning it in the left hand, the lock outwards; at the same time face to the front, turning on the left heel and carrying the right foot in front, the heel three inches from the hollow of the left foot.

2. Let go the carbine with the right hand, bring it down with the left hand along and near the body, the left arm extended, the guard touching the left leg, the muzzle in the direction of the right eye, four inches from the body; seize the carbine with the two last fingers of the right hand, one inch from the muzzle, the cartridge being still held between the two first fingers and the thumb.

6. **Charge — Cartridge.** (One time.)

At the last part of the command, which is cartridge, cast the eyes upon the muzzle, turn the back of the right hand towards the body, raising the elbow as high as the wrist, and pour the powder into the barrel; shake the cartridge, push it in with the fore finger, and keep the right hand in its position, the back of it towards the body, the fingers joined and extended.
7. **Draw — Ramrod.** (One time.)

At the last part of the command, which is ramrod, seize the ramrod, draw it, and insert it about six inches into the barrel.

8. **Ram — Cartridge.** (One time, two motions.)

(See plate above, *Draw Ramrod.*

1. At the last part of the command, which is cartridge, push the cartridge to the bottom.

2. Strike it twice smartly with the ramrod, the fingers underneath the elbow, separate from the body.

9. **Return — Ramrod.** (One time.)

At the last part of the command, which is ramrod, draw the ramrod out of the barrel, and return it, the thumb and fore finger still holding the end of it.

10. **Carry — Arms.** (One time, two motions.)

1. At the last part of the command, which is arms, raise the carbine vertically with the left hand, turning it at the same time; the barrel four inches from, and opposite to the right shoulder; the left hand as high as the hip; place the right hand at the small of the stock, and carry the right foot by the side of the left.
2. Press the carbine against the shoulder with the right hand, and drop the left quickly by the side.

**Loading at Will.**

When the men load properly in ten times, they are practised to load at will; the instructor commands: *Load at will.*

**Load.**

At the second command, which is load, they execute the times of loading without stopping at any one, and without waiting for each other.

**Note.**—The instructor should require the men to load calmly and without hurry; to preserve the proper position of the body, and to execute all the motions with precision, especially those of prime, charge cartridge, and ram cartridge.

**Firing.**

The instructor should always place himself behind the troop to command the firing.

**Position of the Front Rank.**

The instructor commands,

*Ready.* (One time, two motions.)

1. At the command ready, make a half face to the right on the left heel, carrying the right foot square behind the left, the hollow of it opposite to, and three inches from, the left heel; detach the carbine with the right hand vertically four inches from the shoulder, seize it with the left hand, below the lower band, the thumb upon the barrel; raise it with both hands, the left as high as
the neck; place the right thumb upon the head of the cock, the fore finger upon the guard, the others under it, the elbow as high as the hand.

2. Cock the piece, by lowering quickly the right elbow, and seize the small of the stock.

_Aim._ (One time.)

At the command aim, lower the muzzle quickly, slip the left hand to the lower band, holding the carbine with the thumb and fore finger of this hand, the other fingers closed, press the butt against the shoulder, the muzzle a little lowered, the elbows down without being pressed against the body; place the face against the stock, shut the left eye, direct the right eye along the barrel to aim, and place the fore finger of the right hand on the trigger.

To recover arms before firing, the instructor commands

_Recover — Arms._ (One time.)

At the last part of the command, which is arms, take the finger from the trigger, raise the carbine quickly, and resume the position of the second motion of _ready._

To carry arms without firing, after having made ready or recover arms, the instructor commands

_Carry — Arms._ (Two times.)

1. At the first part of the command, which is carry, place the right thumb upon the head of the cock, the fore-finger on the trigger, the others under the guard; pull back the cock, press the fore-finger on the trigger to uncock, holding the cock with the thumb, let it down until the hammer touches the cap.
2. At the last part of the command, which is arms, bring down the carbine with both hands, the right one at the small of the stock, press the carbine against the shoulder, drop the left hand by the side, face to the front, and bring the right foot by the side of the left.

The squad being at the position aim, to fire, the instructor commands

*Fire.* (One time.)

At the command, fire, press the fore-finger against the trigger, and fire, without lowering the head or turning it, and remain in this position.

If, after having fired, the instructor does not wish to load, he commands

*Carry — Arms.* (Two times.)

1. At the first part of the command, which is carry, bring back the carbine quickly, and place the butt under the right arm, the left hand on the lower band, the left wrist two inches below the right breast, the elbow against the body, the muzzle as high as the chin; seize the small of the stock with the right hand.

2. At the last part of the command, which is arms, carry arms, facing at the same time to the front, and drop the left hand quickly by the side.

If, after having fired, the instructor wishes to load, he commands

*Load.* (One time.)

At the command, load, bring down the carbine to the position of load, load at will, carry arms, and face to the front.

*Position of the Rear Rank.*

The instructor commands

*Ready.* (One time, two motions.)

1. At the command, ready, execute the first motion of ready, p. 281, at the same time step off six inches to the right with the right foot, carrying the left foot three inches in front of the hollow of the right, so as to be placed opposite to the interval on the right of the file-leader.

2. Execute the second motion of ready, p. 282.
Aim. (See cut, p. 282.) (One time.)

At the command aim, carry the left foot six inches to the front, without bending the right knee; lower the muzzle quickly in such a manner that it shall project beyond the front rank, press the butt against the right shoulder; execute the rest of the motion as it is prescribed, p. 282.

Position of the feet in two ranks in firing.
Recover — Arms.

As it is prescribed, p. 282, remaining opposite to the interval, and bringing the left foot three inches from the hollow of the right.

Carry — Arms. (Two times.)

1. At the first part of the command, which is carry, execute the first motion of carry arms, p. 282.

2. At the last part of the command, which is arms, bring down the carbine with both hands, the right hand on the small of the stock, press the carbine against the shoulder, drop the left hand quickly by the side; at the same time return behind the file-leader, by stepping six inches to the left with the left foot, face to the front, and carry the right heel by the side of the left.

The squad being at the position of aim, to fire, the instructor commands

Fire.

As it is prescribed, p. 283.

If, after firing, the instructor does not wish to load, he commands

Carry — Arms. (Two times.)

1. At the first part of the command, which is carry, execute the first motion of carry arms, p. 283.

2. At the second command, which is arms, execute the second motion of carry arms, p. 283.

If, after firing, the instructor wishes to load, he commands

Load.

At the command, load, bring down the carbine and load as in p. 281, carry arms, face to the front, and resume the position behind the file-leader.
HALL’S CARBINE.

Loading in five times.

1. The squad being at carry arms, the instructor commands load in five times.

   Load. (One time, three motions.)

   1. At the command, load, make a half face to the right on the left heel, placing the hollow of the right foot opposite to and three inches behind the heel of the left; seize the carbine at the right shoulder with the left hand.

   2. Slip the left hand down to the lower band, and raise the carbine vertically in front of the centre of the body, the barrel towards the right eye; seize the lever with the thumb and fore-finger of the right hand.

   3. Spring open the chamber, and carry the hand to the cartridge box and open it.

2. Handle — Cartridge. (One time, one motion.)

   Draw the cartridge, tear it to the powder with the teeth, and carry it to the right side of the muzzle of the chamber, holding it carefully between the thumb and two first fingers.

3. Charge — Cartridge. (One time, one motion.)

   Shake the powder well into the chamber, force the paper and ball upon it with the little finger; shut down the chamber with the thumb, half cock, remove the old cap, and carry the hand to the cap box.

4. Prime. (One time, one motion.)

   Fix the cap, let down the cock, and seize the piece at the small of the stock with the right hand.

5. Carry — Arms. (One time, two motions.)

   1. Carry the carbine to the right shoulder, the barrel to the rear; reverse the position of the right hand, at the same time face to the front, and bring the right heel to the side of the left.

   2. Drop the left hand to its side.
TARGET PRACTICE, WITH CARBINE.

The troopers are formed in one rank, three hundred paces from, and opposite the target.

A stake is planted in the direction from the troop to the target, to indicate the distance from which the troopers are to fire.

The carbine is fired at fifty paces, (and pistol at ten.) As the troopers become more habituated to the target practice, the stake is progressively removed, until at the distance of one hundred paces for the carbine, (and thirty for the pistol.)

After the carbines are loaded, the trooper designated leaves the ranks, takes the position of advanced carbine, and marches straight to the stake. Having reached it, he halts, and places his horse in such a direction that the piece is directed between the shoulder and the left ear, he then cocks his carbine, fires, turns about; he returns, loading his piece at the same time, passes by the rear, and places himself on the left of the rank.

The troopers having executed these movements correctly at a walk, are exercised in them at the trot, and at the gallop.
RUNNING AT THE HEADS, WITH SWORDS.

EXPLANATION OF THE PLATE.

To perfect troopers, in conducting their horses, and in the use of their arms, they are exercised at the heads.

For this purpose four heads, made of canvas, and stuffed with straw, are placed upon wooden posts, five feet six inches high, and ranged upon the two long sides of the riding ground. They are designated as a, b, c, d, and all placed at one pace from the track, except letter b, which is at two paces, and at which the trooper fires his pistol.

The first head is placed opposite the left of each rank.

The second, at an equal distance from the first and the third; the third at the middle of the long side.

The fourth is placed opposite the right of each rank.

In order to calm the horses, the instructor causes the troopers to make several turns upon the track, to both hands, at the walk, and at the trot.

The troopers are then formed at the extremities of the ground, that the two ranks face each other, the back towards the short sides, and at six paces from the track. The pistols are then loaded.

Only two troopers occupy the course at the same time. The commander (or instructor) designates the one upon whom the other is to regulate himself.

At a notice, the trooper designated, (from the right or left,) places himself upon the track in front of the corner of the riding ground, and in rear of the left of his rank.

Both troopers draw pistol, cock it, and bring it to the advance, holding themselves ready to commence the march. (fig. 1. 1.)

At the command, March! the two troopers move off at a walk; on arriving abreast of head, (c, c,) they take the trot, (fig. 2. 2), and at the first corner they take the gallop, (fig. 3. 3.) They pass behind the opposite rank, continue to follow the track, observing to keep their horses steady, pass behind their own rank, and when they come near head (b,) they lower the pistol, the arm half extended, aim, and fire, taking care to keep their horses well in hand; the pistol is then returned, draw the sabre, carry it to the shoulder, then raise the sword above the head, the point inclined to the left. Having arrived at head, a, (fig. 5. 5,) which is on the left of the rank opposite to their own, they cut it vertically; they then take the position of the first, (fig. 6. 6.)

Having arrived at head, c, they cut horizontally, (fig. 7. 7,) and then take the position of (fig. 8. 8,) lower the hand near the right hip, the thumb extended on the right side of the gripe, the point a little higher than the wrist, thrust to the front, extending the arm to its full length, return to the left shoulder.

36
APPENDIX.

Having arrived at head, d, they give point, take it off, and elevate the sabre to the full extent of the arm, the blade and wrist perpendicular to the right shoulder.

They pass for the second time behind their own rank. At the middle of the long side, they take the trot, and then the walk, on arriving abreast of the opposite rank, they leave the track, take the shortest route, (fig. 9. 9), and form in their own rank, (if they advance from the left, they will form on the right, when they return; if they advance from the right, they will form on the left, when they return,) passing by the rear, and return the sabre.

To practise at targets or heads with the pistol, balls should be prohibited when they are brought so near together, as the blank cartridge, thus near, is sufficient to blow off the head. After the horses are well broke in, balls can be used, and the ranks halted in the distance; the head should also be made of wood, and placed ten paces from the track.

The commander will remind the troopers that the essential point is to conduct their horses well, and they should not, in any case, derange the position of the body, or of the bridle hand.
No. 5.

TRUMPET, OR BUGLE SIGNALS.

"For if the trumpet give an uncertain sound, who shall prepare himself to the battle."

Cor. xiv. 8.

CONTENTS.

No. 1. The General.
   2. Boots and Saddles.
   3. To Horse.
   4. Assembly.
   5. To Arms.
   6. To the Standard.
   7. March.
   8. The Charge.
   9. Rally.
  10. Reveille.
  11. Stable Call.
  12. Watering Call.
  15. Orders.
  16. Assembly of Buglers.
  17. Retreat.
  18. Fatigue Call.
  19. Dinner Call.
  20. Distributions.

No. 21. Drill Call.
   22. Officers' Call.
   25. Officers take place.
   26. Sick Call.
   27. Tattoo.
   28. For the service of Skirmishers.
      No. 1. Forward.
      2. Halt.
      3. To the Left.
      4. To the Right.
      5. About.
      6. Rally on Chief.
      7. Trot.
      8. Gallop.
     10. Disperse.

29. Quick Step.
No. 1. THE GENERAL.

Vivace.

No. 2. BOOTS AND SADDLES.

Allegro.

No. 3. TO HORSE.

Presto.

No. 4. ASSEMBLY.

Alto. Moderato.

No. 5. TO ARMS.

Allegro.
APPENDIX.

No. 7. MARCH.

No. 8. THE CHARGE.

No. 9. RALLY.

No. 10. REVEILLE.

Ad Libitum.

Marcia.
TRUMPET, OR BUGLE SIGNALS.

No. 11. STABLE CALL.

No. 12. WATERING CALL.
APPENDIX.

No. 13. BREAKFAST.

No. 14. ASSEMBLY OF GUARD.

No. 15. ORDERS.

No. 16. ASSEMBLY OF BUGLERS.

No. 17. RETREAT.

As a signal play to the mark ☐
TRUMPET, OR BUGLE SIGNALS.

No. 18. FATIGUE CALL.

No. 19. DINNER CALL.

No. 20. DISTRIBUTIONS.
No. 21. DRILL CALL.

No. 22. OFFICERS' CALL.

No. 23. COMMON STEP.
No. 24. CEASE FIRING.

No. 25. OFFICERS TAKE PLACE.

No. 26. SICK CALL.
No. 27. TATTOO.

28. FOR THE SERVICE OF SKIRMISHERS.

No. 1. FORWARD.

No. 2. HALT.

No. 3. TO THE LEFT.

No. 4. TO THE RIGHT.
TRUMPET, OR BUGLE SIGNALS.

No. 5. ABOUT.

No. 6. RALLY ON CHIEFS.

No. 7. TROT.

No. 8. GALLOP.

No. 9. COMMENCE FIRING.

No. 10. DISPERSE.
No. 29.  QUICK MARCH.
No. 6.

HYMNS.

CONTENTS.

1. God's wonders of creation.
2. The warfare.
3. Prayer for the President, Congress, Magistrates, &c.
4. On a day of prayer for success in war.
5. Disappointments in war.
7. For a day of prayer in time of war.
8. Peace prayed for.
10. The nation's safety and triumph.
11. God is for Israel.
12. The conqueror's song.
15. Thanksgiving for victory.
16. Thanksgiving for God's dominion and our deliverance.
17. Praise for national peace and prosperity.
18. Thanksgiving for national deliverance.
19. A general thanksgiving.
21. The end.

"Some trust in chariots, and some in horses; but we will remember the name of the Lord our God." Psalm xx. 7.

"In the name of our God we will set up our banners." Psalm xx. 5.

1. C. M.

God's wonders of creation, providence, redemption of Israel, and salvation of his people.

1. Give thanks to God, the Sovereign Lord,
   His mercies still endure!
   And be the King of Kings ador'd;
   His truth is ever sure.

2. What wonders hath his wisdom done!
   How mighty is his hand!
   Heaven, earth, and sea, he fram'd alone,
   How wide is his command!

3. The sun supplies the day with light;
   How bright his counsels shine!
   The moon and stars adorn the night;
   His works are all divine!
4. He struck the sons of Egypt dead,
   How dreadful is his rod!
And thence with joy his people led;
   How gracious is our God!
5. He cleft the swelling sea in two;
   His arm is great in might,
And gave the tribes a passage through;
   His power and grace unite.
6. But Pharaoh's army there he drown'd;
   How glorious are his ways!
And brought his saints through desert ground,
   Eternal be his praise.
7. Great monarchs fell beneath his hand,
   Victorious is his sword!
While Israel took the promis'd land,
   And faithful is his word.
8. He saw the nations dead in sin;
   He felt his pity move:
How sad the state the world was in!
   How boundless was his love!
9. He sent to save us from our wo;
   His goodness never fails;
From death, and hell, and every foe;
   And still his grace prevails.
10. Give thanks to God the Heavenly King;
    His mercies still endure;
Let the whole earth his praises sing;
    His truth is ever sure.

2. L. M.

The warfare. Eph. vi. 13 - 17.

1. My Captain sound th' alarm of war;
   "Awake! the powers of hell are near;
To arms! to arms!" I hear him cry,
   "Tis yours to conquer, or to die!"
2. Rous'd by the animating sound,
I cast my eager eyes around;
HYMNS.

Make haste to gird my armor on,
And bid each trembling fear begone.

3. Hope is my helmet; faith my shield;
Thy word, my God, the sword I wield;
With sacred truth my loins are girt,
And holy zeal inspires my heart,

4. Thus armed I venture on the fight;
Resolved to put my foes to flight;
While Jesus kindly deigns to spread
His conquering banner o'er my head.

5. In him I hope; in him I trust;
His bleeding cross is all my boast;
Through troops of foes he'll lead me on
To victory, and the victor's crown.

3. L. M.

Prayer for the President, Congress, Magistrates, &c.

1. Great Lord of all, thy matchless power,
Archangels in the heavens adore;
With them our Sovereign, thee we own,
And bow the knee before thy throne.

2. Let dove-ey'd peace, with odor'd wing,
On us her grateful blessings fling;
Freedom spread beauteous as the morn,
And plenty fill her ample horn.

3. Pour on our chief thy mercies down,
His days with heavenly wisdom crown;
Resolve his heart, where'er he goes,
To launch the stream that duty shows.

4. Over our capital diffuse,
From hills divine, thy welcome dews;
While Congress, in one patriot band,
Prove the firm fortress of our land.

5. Our Magistrates with grace sustain,
Nor let them bear the sword in vain;
Long as they fill their awful seat,
Be vice seen dying at their feet.
6. For ever from the western sky,
   Bid the destroying angel fly;
With grateful songs our hearts inspire,
   And round us blaze a wall of fire.

4. L. M.

On a day or prayer for success in war.

1. Lord, how shall wretched sinners dare
   Look up to thine abode!
Or offer their imperfect prayer,
   Before a just, a holy God?

2. Bright terrors guard thy awful seat,
   And dazzling glories veil thy face;
Yet mercy calls us to thy feet,
   Thy throne is still a throne of grace.

3. O may our souls thy grace adore,
   May Jesus plead our humble claim,
While thy protection we implore,
   In his prevailing, glorious name.

4. With all the boasted pomp of war,
   In vain we dare the hostile field;
In vain, unless the Lord be there;
   Thy arm alone our land can shield.

5. Let past experience of thy care,
   Support our hope, our trust invite!
Again attend our humble prayer!
   Again be mercy thy delight!

6. Our arms succeed, our councils guide,
   Let thy right hand our cause maintain;
Till war's destructive rage subside,
   And peace resume her gentle reign.

7. Great God, the promis'd period bring,
   Let standards be no more unfurl'd;
Come, peace, and bless with balmy wing,
   The eastern and the western world.

8. When shall the gospel's healing ray
   (Kind source of amity divine,)
HYMNS.

Spread o'er the world celestial day!
When shall the nations, Lord, be thine!

5. C. M.

Disappointments in War.

1. Lord, hast thou cast the nations off?
   Must we for ever mourn?
   Wilt thou indulge immortal wrath?
   Shall mercy ne'er return?

2. The terror of one frown of thine,
   Melts all our strength away;
   Like men that, drunk with wine,
   We tremble in dismay.

3. Our country shakes beneath thy stroke,
   And dreads thy threatening hand;
   O heal the people thou hast broke,
   Confirm the wavering land.

4. Lift up a banner in the field,
   For those that fear thy name;
   Save thy beloved with thy shield,
   And put our foes to shame.

5. Go with our armies to the fight,
   Like a confederate God;
   In vain confederate powers unite
   Against thy lifted rod.

6. Our troops shall gain a wide renown
   By thine assisting hand;
   'Tis God that treads the mighty down,
   And makes the feeble stand.

6. L. M.

National judgments deprecated, and national mercies pleaded for. Amos, iii. 1–6.

1. While o'er our guilty land, O Lord,
   We view the terrors of thy sword;
   Oh! whither shall the helpless fly;
   To whom but thee direct their cry!
APPENDIX.

2. The helpless sinner's cries and tears
   Are grown familiar to thine ears;
   Oft has thy mercy sent relief,
   When all was fear and hopeless grief.

3. On thee our guardian God, we call;
   Before thy throne of grace we fall;
   And is there no deliverance there;
   And must we perish in despair?

4. See, we repent, we weep, we mourn,
   To our forsaken God we turn;
   Oh spare our guilty country, spare
   The church, which thou hast planted here.

5. We plead thy grace, indulgent God;
   We plead thy son's atoning blood;
   We plead thy gracious promises,
   And are they unavailing pleas?

6. These pleas, presented at thy throne,
   Have brought ten thousand blessings down,
   On guilty lands, in helpless wo;
   Let them prevail to save us too.

7. L. M.

For a day of Prayer in time of War.

1. Now may the God of power and grace
   Attend his people's humble cry!
   Jehovah hears, when Israel prays,
   And brings deliverance from on high.

2. Well he remembers all our sighs,
   His love exceeds our best deserts;
   His love accepts the sacrifice
   Of humble groans and broken hearts.

3. In his salvation is our hope,
   And in the name of Israel's God,
   Our troops shall lift their banners up,
   Our navies spread their flags abroad.

4. Some trust in horses, train'd for war,
   And some of chariots make their boasts;
HYMNS.

Our surest expectations are
   From thee, the Lord of heavenly hosts.

5. O! may the memory of thy name
   Inspire our armies for the fight!
   Our foes shall fall, and die with shame,
   Or quit the field with shameful flight.

6. Now save us, Lord, from slavish fear,
   Now let our hope be firm and strong,
   Till thy salvation shall appear,
   And joy and triumph raise the song.

   ———

8. L. M.

Peace prayed for.

1. On us, oppress'd beneath thy stroke,
   Now overwhelm'd with guilt and shame,
   Deign, mighty God, once more to look;
   The same thy power, thy grace the same.

2. Let peace descend with balmy wing,
   And all its blessings round her shed;
   Her liberties be well secur'd,
   And commerce lift its fainting head;

3. Let the loud cannon cease to roar,
   The warlike trump no longer sound;
   The din of arms be heard no more,
   Nor human blood pollute the ground.

4. Let hostile troops drop from their hands
   The useless sword, the glittering spear;
   And join in friendship's sacred bands,
   Nor one dissentient voice be there.

5. Thus save, O Lord, a sinking land;
   Millions of tongues shall then adore,
   Resound the honors of thy name,
   And spread thy praise from shore to shore.
APPENDIX.

9. L. M.
Prayer for deliverance answered. Isa. xxvi. 8-12, 20, 21.

1. In thine own ways, O God of love,
   We wait the visits of thy grace,
   Our soul's desire is to thy name,
   And the remembrance of thy face.

2. Our thoughts are searching, Lord, for thee,
   'Mongst the black shades of lonesome night;
   Our earnest cries salute the skies,
   Before the dawn restores the light.

3. Look, how rebellious men deride
   The tender patience of our God;
   But they shall see thy lifted hand,
   And feel the scourges of thy rod.

4. Hark, the Eternal rends the sky,
   A mighty voice before him goes,
   A voice of music to his friends;
   But threatening thunder to his foes.

5. Come, children, to your father's arms,
   Hide in the chambers of my grace,
   Till the fierce storms be overblown,
   And my revenging fury cease.

6. My sword shall boast its thousand slain,
   And drink the blood of haughty kings,
   While heavenly peace around my flock
   Stretches its soft and shady wings.

10. L. M.
The nation's safety and triumph.

1. God is the refuge of his saints,
   When storms of sharp distress invade;
   Ere we can offer our complaints,
   Behold him present with his aid.

2. Let mountains from their seats be hurl'd
   Down to the deep and buried there;
   Convulsions shake the solid world,
   Our faith shall never yield to fear.
3. Loud may the troubled ocean roar,
   In sacred peace our souls abide,
While every nation, every shore,
   Trembles, and dreads the swelling tide.

11. L. M.

God is for Israel.

1. Let Zion in her King rejoice,
   Though tyrants rage and kingdoms rise;
   He utters his Almighty voice,
   The nations melt, the tumult dies.
2. The Lord, of old for Jacob fought,
   And Jacob's God is still our aid;
   Behold the works his hand has wrought,
   What desolations he has made!
3. From sea to sea through all the shores,
   He makes the noise of battle cease;
   When from on high his thunder roars,
   He awes the trembling world to peace.
4. He breaks the bow, he cuts the spear,
   Chariots he burns with heavenly flame;
   Keep silence all the earth and hear
   The sound and glory of his name.
5. Be still, and learn that I am God,
   I'll be exalted o'er the lands,
   I will be known and fear'd abroad,
   But still my throne in Zion stands.

12. C. M.

The Conqueror's Song. Psalm 18.

1. To thine almighty arm we owe,
   The triumphs of the day;
   Thy terrors, Lord, confound the foe,
   And melt their strength away.
2. 'Tis by thine aid our troops prevail,
   And break united powers,
APPENDIX.

Or burn their boasted fleets, or scale
The proudest of their towers.

3. How we have chas'd them through the field,
   And trod them to the ground,
   While thy salvation was our shield,
   But they no shelter found.

4. In vain to idol-saints they cry,
   And perish in their blood;
   Where is a rock so great, so high,
   So powerful as our God?

5. The rock of Israel ever lives,
   His name be ever blest;
   'Tis his own arm the victory gives,
   And gives his people rest.

13. L. M.

A Song for Public Deliverance.

1. Had not the Lord, may Israel say,
   Had not the Lord maintain'd our side,
   When men to make our lives a prey,
   Rose like the swelling of the tide.

2. We leap for joy, we shout and sing,
   Who just escap'd the fatal stroke;
   So flies the bird with cheerful wing,
   When once the fowler's snare is broke.

3. For ever blessed be the Lord,
   Who broke the fowler's cursed snare,
   Who sav'd us from the murdering sword,
   And made our lives and souls his care.

4. Our help is in Jehovah's name,
   Who form'd the earth, and built the skies;
   He that upholds that wond'rous frame,
   Guards his people with watchful eyes.
Victry and triumph over temporal enemies. Psalm 18.

1. We love thee, Lord, and we adore,
   Now is thine arm reveal'd;
   Thou art our strength, our heavenly tower,
   Our bulwark and our shield.

2. We fly to our eternal rock,
   And find a sure defence;
   His holy name our lips invoke,
   And draw salvation thence.

3. When God, our leader, shines in arms,
   What mortal heart can bear
   The thunder of his loud alarms?
   The lightning of his spear?

4. He rides upon the winged wind,
   And angels in array
   In millions wait to know his mind,
   And swift as flames obey.

5. He speaks, and at his fierce rebuke
   Whole armies are dismay'd;
   His voice, his frown, his angry look,
   Strikes all their courage dead.

6. He forms our generals for the field,
   With all their dreadful skill;
   Gives them his awful sword to wield,
   And makes their hearts of steel.

7. He arms our captains to the fight,
   Though there his name's forgot;
   He girded Cyrus with his might,
   But Cyrus knew him not.

8. Oft has the Lord whole nations bless
   For his own Church's sake:
   The powers that give his people rest
   Shall of his care partake.

39
APPENDIX.

15. C. M.

Thanksgiving for Victory.

1. To thee who reign'st over enemies,
   And reign'st supreme below,
   Thou God of wisdom, power, and love,
   We our successes owe.

2. The thundering horse, the martial band,
   Without thine aid were vain;
   And victory flies at thy command
   To crown the bright campaign.

3. Thy mighty arm unseen was nigh,
   Then we our foes assail'd;
   'Tis thou hast rais'd our honors high,
   And o'er their hosts prevail'd.

4. Their mounds, their camps, their lofty towers.
   Into our hands are given,
   Not from desert or strength of ours,
   But through the grace of heaven.

5. What though no columns lifted high,
   Stand deed inscribed with praise,
   Yet sounding honors to the sky,
   Our grateful tongues shall raise.

6. To our young race will we proclaim
   The mercies God has shown;
   That they may learn to bless his name,
   And choose him for their own.

7. Thus, while we sleep in silent dust,
   When threatening dangers come,
   Their father's God shall be their trust,
   Their refuge, and their home.

16. C. M.

Thanksgiving for God's Dominion and our Deliverance.

1. Zion rejoice, and Judah sing;
   The Lord assumes his throne;
   Come let us own the heavenly King,
   And make his glories known.
2. The great, the wicked, and the proud,
   From their highest seats are hurl'd;
   Jehovah rides upon a cloud,
   And thunders through the world.

3. He reigns upon th' eternal hills,
   Distributes mortal crowns,
   Empires are fix'd beneath his smiles,
   And totter at his frowns.

4. Navies that rule the ocean wide
   Are vanquish'd by his breath;
   And legions arm'd with power and pride
   Descend to watery death.

5. Let tyrants make no more pretence
   To vex our happy land;
   Jehovah's name is our defence,
   Our buckler is his hand.

---

17. L. M.


1. Great Ruler of the earth and skies,
   A word of thy almighty breath
   Can sink the world, or bid it rise;
   Thy smile is life, thy frown is death.

2. When angry nations rush to arms,
   And rage, and noise, and tumult reign,
   And war resounds its dire alarms,
   And slaughter spreads the hostile plains;

3. Thy sovereign eye looks calmly down,
   And marks their course, and bounds their pow'r,
   Thy word the angry nations own,
   And noise and war are heard no more.

4. Then peace return with balmy wing,
   Sweet peace, with her, what blessings fled!
   Glad plenty smiles, the valleys sing,
   Reviving commerce lifts her head.

5. Thou good, and wise, and righteous Lord,
   All move subservient to thy will;
APPENDIX.

And peace and war await thy word,
And thy sublime decrees fulfill.

6. To thee we pay our grateful songs,
   Thy kind protection still implore;
   O may our hearts, and lives, and tongues,
   Confess thy goodness, and adore.

---

18. L. M.

Thanksgiving for National Deliverance. Luxx i. 74, 75

1. Praise to the Lord, who bows his ear
   Propitious to his people's prayer,
   And, though deliverance long delay,
   Answers in his well-chosen day.

2. Salvation doth to God belong;
   His power and grace shall be our song;
   The tribute of our love we bring
   To thee, our Saviour and our King!

3. Still be it our supreme delight
   To walk as in thy honor'd sight;
   Hence in thy precepts and thy fear
   'Till life's last hour to persevere.

---

19.

A General Thanksgiving.

1. Say, should we search the globe around,
   Where can such happiness be found
   As dwells in this much favor'd land?
   Here plenty reigns; here freedom sheds
   Her choicest blessings on our heads;
   By God supported still we stand.

2. Here commerce spreads the wealthy store,
   Which comes from every foreign shore;
   Science and art their charms display;
   Religion teacheth us to raise
   Our voices in our Maker's praise,
   As truth and conscience point the way.
3. These are thy gifts, Almighty King!  
From thee our matchless blessings spring;  
Th' extended shade, the fruitful skies,  
The raptures liberty bestows,  
The eternal joys the gospel shows,  
All from thy boundless goodness rise.

4. With grateful hearts, with cheerful tongues,  
To God we raise united songs;  
His power and mercy we proclaim;  
And still, through ev'ry age, shall own,  
Jehovah here hath fix'd his throne.  
And triumph in his mighty name.

5. Long as the moon her course shall run,  
Or man behold the circling sun,  
May'st thou o'er fair Columbia reign;  
Still crown her counsels with success,  
With peace and joy her borders bless,  
And all her sacred rights maintain.

20. C.

The Christian Soldier. 1 Cor. xvi. 13.

1. Am I a soldier of the cross,  
A follower of the Lamb?  
And shall I fear to own his cause,  
Or blush to speak his name?

2. Must I be carried to the skies,  
On flowery beds of ease;  
While others fought to win the prize,  
And sail'd through bloody seas?

3. Are there no foes for me to face?  
Must I not stem the flood?  
Is this vile world a friend to grace,  
To help me on to God?

4. Sure I must fight, if I would reign;  
Increase my courage Lord!  
I'll bear the toil, endure the pain,  
Supported by thy word.
5. Thy saints, in all this glorious war,
   Shall conquer though they die;
   They see the triumph from afar,
   And seize it with their eye.
6. When that illustrious day shall rise,
   And all thy armies shine
   In robes of victory through the skies,
   The glory shall be thine.

21. L. M.

The End.

1. Behold the sons, the heirs of God,
   So dearly bought with Jesus' blood;
   Are they not born to heavenly joys,
   And shall they stoop to earthly toys?
2. Can laughter feed th' immortal mind?
   Were spirits of celestial kind
   Made for a jest, for sport and play—
   To wear out time, and waste the day?
3. Doth vain discourse, or empty mirth,
   Well suit the honors of their birth?
   Shall they be fond of gay attire,
   Which children love, and fools admire?
4. What if we wear the richest vest,
   Peacocks and flies are better drest;
   This flesh, with all its gaudy forms,
   Must drop to dust and feed the worms.
5. Lord, raise our hearts and passions higher,
   Touch our vain souls with sacred fire;
   Then with a heaven-directed eye,
   We'll pass these glittering trifles by.
6. We'll look on all the toys below
   With such disdain as angels do;
   And wait the call that bids us rise
   To mansions promis'd in the skies.